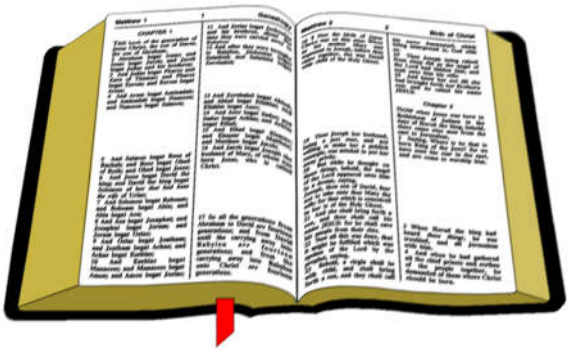
Study the Rest of the Bible



Prayerfully read and study ALL of the Bible, including the verses that some people and churches tend to ignore and brush off; They are Bible too.

By Frederick C. Rauch

I am now 77 years old. All of my life I have been around churches and Bible teaching. I have seen, *(it appears)*, that most churches are off Bible to varying degrees, because they simply focus on their chosen parts of the Bible, and dismiss Bible verses that appear to challenge their beliefs. For my witnessing effort, I wrote this book explaining/revealing the problem, hopefully some people will wake up and seriously consider the rest of the Bible.

I am encouraging people to reproduce this book, and give it to others. I am encouraging people to put this book on their web site, offering it to others as a free download. I believe people need the information contained in this book for their Spiritual well-being. I am 77 years old, and I do not want this book to die with me. Thus, I am trying to get people to reproduce this book and keep it alive. Thank you!

You may reproduce this PDF book for free.

You may print this book on paper for free

You may reproduce this book, PDF or on paper, and give it to others for free.

Read the legal details at the end of this book; they are very mild.

You, and everyone, and anyone, may make and sell reproductions of this book. However, the price you charge for the book is to cover all of your costs, your time, your investments, your profit, etc. You do not hold or gain any rights or ownership of the book and its contents, including the text, the art work, the PDF File or code, the software, etc., or anything else concerning the book.

Are there any restrictions? YES!

- **You are NOT allowed to alter this book, or alter any portion of this book, in any way, per copyright.** You are NOT allowed to change any part of the message, in any way. You MUST reproduce this book as is.
- You are NOT allowed to update this book.
- You are NOT allowed to edit this book it any way, per copyright *(except to correct typos, and to correct the Bible's italicized words, and the other Bible's words, to make them match the AV version Bible.)*

My book was made to be freely reproduced and given to everyone. It is a book to hopefully get people started to prayerfully read and study the Bible, so they read and study things they never knew were in the Bible. When we read the Bible cover to cover, repeatedly, we also read over the Bible verses that people and churches tend to ignore and brush off.

This book shows us some Bible verses that are often ignored, concerning how we are to join and put on Jesus Christ. I believe most people will see things about joining Jesus Christ that they were never taught.

There are also other topics in the Bible, that are taught with missing pieces; let's prayerfully read the Bible and find them.

Any time we are prayerfully reading and studying things in the Bible, with a right heart, we will learn and grow in God. We will learn a bit here, and a bit there, and God will start to reveal how they all fit together. We do not have to be highly intelligent to understand the things in the Bible. However, we need to love God, and have a right heart, because it is not in our own ability to understand the things of God; rather, our understanding about God, is a gift from God, to the people who genuinely love God with their all. God opens our eyes of understanding as we read the Bible.

Email a copy to your friends. The more it is reproduced and given to others, the happier I am. You may **put a copy of my book on your moral website** *(moral by God's standards)*, so people will be able to download it from your website *(a way to give copies of my book to other people)* Read the legal details at the end of this book; they are very mild. Start a ministry, by adding this Free PDF book as an attachment to every email you send.

"ye shall seek me, and find *me*,
when ye shall search for me
with all your heart" Jeremiah 29:13

"13 And ye shall seek me, and find *me*, when ye shall search for me with all your heart."



Study the Rest of the Bible
by Frederick C. Rauch

Copyright © 2004 – 2026 by Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors. All Rights reserved.

The Scriptures are from the Authorized King James Version Bible, the rights in which are vested in the Crown.

I give my permission
for you to make *(unaltered)* copies of my PDF book.

You may print it on paper, in whole or in part, as long as they are printed without any alterations, and the copyright page *(this page)* is fastened to everything that is printed. Read the legal details at the end of this book; they are very mild.

Earlier versions of this book were titled:
“Missing Bible Verses”
“Ignored Bible Verses”

This is the Copyright Page

A few of the many things you will learn,
as you read this book, are as follows:

How does the world get so many different beliefs from the same Bible?

Why did St. Paul **re-**baptize people who were already baptized with the baptism of John the Baptist?

He **re-**baptized them in the name of the “Lord Jesus”.

Do you know the baptism words
(baptize, baptism, Baptist, etc.)
were not translated into English?

These Greek words were spelled with the English alphabet, instead of translating them into English?

We have Matthew 28:19,
but everything in the Bible, including baptisms, was always performed in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

Why can’t we find anything in the Bible, including baptisms, being performed using the descriptive names of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit?

Do you know the Bible repeatedly ties baptism to the remission of sins?
How can baptism remit sins?

Why would some people believe
we need to speak in tongues in order to go to Heaven?

Everyone who genuinely receives the Holy Ghost/Spirit becomes a new/changed person.

Table of Contents Outline

I have placed the chapters in an outline arrangement. The outline arrangement shows the relationship the chapters have with each other. Take a moment and look over the outline.

- About this book
- Definitions

The first 7 chapters of this book teach us basic/general things to help prepare us for studying the rest of this book.

1. Re-examining our beliefs, using the whole Bible

2. Further Understanding

3. How does the world get so many different beliefs from the same Bible?

4. The Christian Holy Bible is different from other books, because the Bible is anointed by God. *(This means: if our heart is right, God speaks to us as we read the Bible.)*

5. How to locate Information in the Bible, and how to study it?

6. Loving God is the Nucleus. Everything good revolves around loving God. ---- How to Receive Blessings from God.

From chapter 7 on, we will start studying beliefs and doctrines. This is where we will start looking at some of the many verses that are ignored by some people/churches.

7. Putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ for the remission of sins.

I. Hear / Believe / Repent

II. Water Baptism

- **A.** The Great Commission
- **B.** The first day of the Church
- **C.** Water Baptism for the remission of sins
- **D.** Why was Jesus baptized?
- **E.** Baptism means immersion
- **F.** Water Baptism, Further than infant sprinkling

G. Once we believe and repent, we need to be baptized immediately.

H. Being Baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”

a. The Bible declares there is only one God. We are not omitting anyone when we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, because the one God is Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

J. The thief on the cross was not baptized

K. 1 Corinthians 1:17

III. Spiritual baptism / Being born again / Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit

AA. Speaking in tongues

aa. Diversities of speaking in tongues

bb. The Spiritual gift of tongues

cc. Decently and in order

dd. When will speaking in tongues cease?

BB. Feeling God's presence

CC. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit is drawing nigh to God, completely giving ourselves to him.

8. Is what we believe to be Reality, truly Reality? & Sin, and its consequences

9. Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, accepting him as our Lord. *(Is the Belief, Saved by Grace, No Works Necessary, Biblically Correct?)*

10. Things do not seem to make sense

11. Doctrinal Boxes

12. How people can get into doctrine boxes that can hinder them from freely studying, and considering, all the Bible verses on equal ground?

An Extra Writing: The wife is to obey her husband, and the husband is to serve his wife.

Wherever we are in God,
we need to grow and do better.



About this book

In this book, I am explaining what I learned and believe is the Biblical truth. I challenge you to get a Bible, and an **exhaustive** concordance, and prayerfully study the things in this book, honestly and without prejudging. Anyone can say anything, including priests/preachers. We need to get in the habit of checking out all beliefs with the whole Bible.

The Bible tells us many things. One thing the Bible tells us is to do to others what we would want them to do to us, and this is a major teaching in the Bible. There are also more things the Bible tells us to do, and we need to do them too.

In this book, I try to show you other things the Bible tells us to do, that some people and churches ignore. This book focuses on the instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ, and the need to love and obey God.

There are also many more topics that are taught in churches with an incomplete list of Bible verses concerning the topic. We need to get into the habit of prayerfully and repeatingly reading and studying the Bible cover to cover; this way we will read and study additional things in the Bible, that we are not being taught in our church.

We need to prayerfully search the Bible daily,
to learn what we are missing.

There are things inside this book for the Biblically educated, and for beginners. There are things in this book for everyone. I believe many Bible scholars will be shown some things in the Bible, that they never noticed in the Bible before.

We need to realize that everyone does not know and understand the same things we know and understand. Some people can grasp and retain things with a once over; other people need repetition to stay focused. Some people will read part of the book one day, and continue reading it

another day; they need the repetition to get their thinking back on track. Some people will pick and read only one section of the book; the repetition helps to prevent voids in their understanding.

Some Bible educated people may find some of the Bible ABC's and the repetition very annoying. But there are other people who need to learn some of the basic ABC's of the Bible, in order to understand other things inside this book.

Do not let the repetition irritate you; you are not required to read the repetition *(you can just skim over them)*, but be sure to note how the verses and things are tied to the current subject. If you endure the repetition and read everything, I believe you will acquire and retain a richer understanding. Repetition helps our minds remember.

Studying deeper into the Bible, taking a fresh look at what the Bible is saying, is expanding our understanding about God.

Prayerfully learn what other people believe the Bible is saying.

As we read this book, "Study the Rest of the Bible," we may learn new things, and say to our self, "I never saw that in the Bible before".

If we are trying to delete *(blank out: push under the rug)* all the Bible verses that appear to disagree with our beliefs, we are playing a game of pretend *(maybe even declining to obey God)*. When we start ignoring/deflecting certain Bible verses, we are rejecting truth.

Beware: If we are not careful, we can read things in the Bible out of Biblical context. We may read a verse, phrase, or sentence in the Bible, and believe it is saying something, but actually our understanding can be incorrect, and out of Biblical context, because we are focusing on too few words.

Some people have actually felt condemned, because of a particular phrase they read in the Bible. They need to keep prayerfully reading the Bible daily, and normally, in time, they will come across Bible verses that say things that add information about their problem phrase, and will bring things back into balance, and give them peace.

Did we genuinely give our self to Jesus Christ?

We read in the Bible that we are saved by faith *(trust)* in the Lord Jesus Christ, by the grace of God, and not by our own works.

We are not perfect, so Jesus Christ who loves us, died on the cross to pay the penalty for our sins. If we properly love and put our trust *(faith)* in Jesus Christ, and follow him, we can go to Heaven. Striving to do, all the things God wants us to do, shows our love, desire, and commitment for God.

Willfully declining/refusing to obey God
is willfully declining/refusing to treat God, as God.

Willfully continuing to defy doing the things God wants us to do separates us from God. Continuing to willfully choose to sin, reveals we are not connected to, and that we do not properly love, God. Choosing to sin, and trusting God to forgive us, is called tempting/testing God. A right heart for God always desires and strives to obey God.

Before Christ ascended up into Heaven, he instructed his eleven disciples to preach the gospel, and baptize the people who believe. I believe, people who choose to ignore Christ' instructions *(including baptism)*, do so because they are not properly given to Christ, not yet. A person, who is properly given to Christ, always strives to obey Jesus Christ. This is because, a person, who is totally given to Christ, wants to obey him.

The question is:
Have we properly given our self to Jesus Christ?

Illustration Teaching: Tom and Joe were sick with the same disease. They went to Dr. Ely, and he told them: "Go see Dr. Smith, because Dr. Smith fully understands this disease. Just put your faith in Dr. Smith, and you will be okay."

Tom and Joe went to Dr. Smith, and he told them what to do. Tom put his trust *(faith)* in Dr. Smith, by following his instructions. But Joe said, "Dr. Ely said, "Just put your faith in Dr. Smith, and you will be okay"; Dr. Ely did not say I had to follow Dr. Smith's instructions too. All I have to do is have faith in Dr. Smith, and I do have faith in Dr. Smith; so Joe did not follow Dr. Smith's instructions.

Likewise: We put out faith in Jesus Christ, by following Christ's instructions *(We are humans, so following Christ's instructions is actually STRIVING to follow Christ's instructions to the best of our ability)*. Following Christ's instructions is not a part of an earning process, towards earning our way into Heaven; it is simply striving to obey our Lord's instructions, loving him *(treating God, as God)*.

When talking about Christianity, people focus on the part about having their sins forgiven. Another part is, God through the Holy Ghost/Spirit molds the forgiven person into a different type of person, a person who keeps growing into God's ways, who thinks and acts Godly. If we think we gave our self to Jesus Christ, but if we are not growing into a person *(a Godly person)*, we better take a deeper look at our self. Growing into being a Godly person is what identifies us as a genuine Christian, distinguishing us from people who just call themselves Christians. If we truly love God, we will be striving to find and do the will of God daily.

We need to know that the Holy Ghost/Spirit is genuinely living inside of us, and we need to know that we are genuinely following the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. If yes, we will be growing into a Godly person, who greatly loves God, and always strives to obey and please God.

A real genuine Christian follows the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who dwells/lives *(24/7)* inside every genuine Christian, teaching and directing the genuine Christian in the ways of God *(causing the Christian to grow into living Godly, a person who is focused on God)*. This change will not happen unless we genuinely have the Holy Ghost /Spirit dwelling inside of us.

The Spirit of God, the Spirit of Christ, and the Holy Ghost/Spirit, are one and the same.

"Now if any man have not
the Spirit of Christ,
he is none of his" Romans 8:9

"9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."

If I do not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of me, what should I do?

1. Keep drawing closer and closer to God;
2. Love God more and more every day;
3. Diligently and wholeheartedly search for God by prayerfully reading and studying the Bible daily;
4. Lift your hands up towards God, and praise God to his face *(speaking directly to God);*
5. Always strive to obey God;
6. Ask God for the Holy Ghost/Spirit;
7. Convince God you greatly want God living inside of you, guiding you.
8. Etc.

Then God will guide you, to do all the things you need to do.

"ye shall seek me, and find *me,*
when ye shall search for me
with all your heart"
(seek God with our all) Jeremiah 29:13

"13 And ye shall seek me, and find *me,* when ye shall search for me with all your heart."

A problem is that too many people and churches focus on too little of the Bible *(they spend insufficient amount of time prayerfully reading and studying the Bible)*, and they do not see the whole picture. People and churches need to start prayerfully reading and studying the Bible cover to cover, continuously and repeatedly. We do not comprehend the Bible by reading it once or twice. We start comprehending the Bible, bit by bit, as we repeatedly and prayerfully read it. Gradually we will start understanding the difficult parts.

Remember: To be able to understand the Bible, we need to love and seek God with all our heart.

Often, people miss the great need for praising God to his face. Genuinely praying and praising God from the bottom of our heart holds great power, and will accomplish great things. One of the greatest things we can do for a closer walk with God is to get down on our knees, lift our hands up towards God, and praise God out loud with all our heart, daily *(this may be done in private)*. If you truly love God; do it!

Jesus sat at Jacob's well and talked with a woman of Samaria. The woman learned that Jesus was the Messiah, and she went and told the men of the city. Then, the men of the city came and talked with Jesus. The men did not have to rely on the words of the woman anymore, because they heard the words directly from Jesus for themselves.

"not because of thy saying:
for we have heard *him* ourselves" John 4:42

"42 And said unto the woman, Now we believe, not because of thy saying: for we have heard *him* ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Savior of the world."

Likewise: Instead of completely putting our trust in men's words, *(preachers, priests, etc.)* we need to wholeheartedly and prayerfully read, study, and see the things in the Bible for our self *(doing it with a right heart)*. We will not have to rely on men's words, because we will have seen it in the Bible for our self. When preachers tell us correct things, repeatedly reading the Bible cover to cover will confirm them.

"they received the word with all readiness of mind,
and searched the scriptures daily,
whether those things were so" Acts 17:10–12

"10 ¶ And the brethren immediately sent away Paul and Silas by night unto Berea: who coming *thither* went into the synagogue of the Jews.
11 These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether those things were so.
12 Therefore many of them believed; also of honorable women which were Greeks, and of men, not a few."

I want you *(the readers)* **to** study the things in this book, and prayerfully study them in the Bible, so you do not have to rely on my words. When you have prayerfully read and studied them in the Bible for yourselves, you will know for a certainly what is the truth. Anyone can say anything; put your trust in God, and sincere prayer, as you read the Holy Bible.

God will allow the people, who wholeheartedly love God, to understand the things about God, as we genuinely, wholeheartedly, prayerfully, diligently, search the Bible with a right heart daily, to learn what is truly God's ways. Then, God will see our heart, and he will let us recognize what is from God, as we painstakingly search the Bible with God's help. Understanding the things of God does not come from intellectual study alone. Rather, genuinely understanding God is a gift from God, to the people who wholeheartedly LOVE God, as they wholeheartedly study and search for the truth.

We must NOT just totally accept what people *(priests, preachers, anyone, including me)* tell us. Too many people will tell us incorrect things; largely because they do not truly, and fully, understand the things of God for themselves. Because they do not fully understand, often, they will simply repeat what they were told in Bible college.

Beware: When you ask someone for help, many times they will show you specially selected Bible verses that they base their beliefs on. Just as words can be used out of context, specially selected verses can be used to support beliefs that are out of Biblical-context.

Just because selected Bible verses, and selected words and phrases are being used, does not mean they are being used out of Biblical context, but they can be. Selected Bible verses, and selected words and phrases, are often used to show genuine Biblical truths, as I do in this book.

Be careful, we are talking about our eternity. Too many people do not truly want to take the amount of time and effort needed to properly search the Bible for truth, so they take the lazy way out, and just ask somebody. But the amount of effort we put forth to understand God, reveals to God how much we truly love and desire God.

We need to watch for Bible verses, and other words and phrases in the Bible, which are contrary to the beliefs we are being taught. Then, we need to prayerfully read and study what the rest of the Bible says about them.

If we start rejecting and deflecting Bible verses, and other words and phrases in the Bible, because they are contrary to the beliefs which we choose to believe, we are living dangerously. When we start rejecting and deflecting Bible verses *(properly understood)*, we are rejecting and deflecting the truth.

Sometimes, people believe that certain Bible verses, and certain words and phrases in the Bible, prove a belief is correct or incorrect. But sometimes they have an incorrect understanding of the words and phrases; then they try to use these incorrectly understood words and phrases to prove, or disprove, a belief.

If we want to correctly understand what certain words and phrases in the Bible mean, we need God's help. If we truly want the truth, we must constantly love God from the deepest depth of our heart. We must diligently, and wholeheartedly, prayerfully read and study the Bible daily *(mostly from the New Testament).* We need to allow God to personally talk to our heart, through the Scriptures. We need to be sure to greatly praise God to his face daily, and we need to regularly attend the best Bible believing church that we can find *(we may have to change churches from time to time, as we learn more Biblical truths)*. If we do this, over time **God will** guide us into the truth. By continually/repeatedly reading the Bible, cover to cover, we will come across things that we were never taught in church.

Genuinely understanding God is a gift directly from God,
to the people who wholeheartedly LOVE God,
as we continually wholeheartedly prayerfully
study and search the Bible for the truth about God.

Definitions

Words and phrases can be a big problem when talking about the things of God. The same words and phrases paint different pictures in the minds of different people. I will explain what I mean when I use the following words:

The Church *(capital C)* - The true Church is all the Christians, collectively, who genuinely have the Holy Ghost *(Holy Spirit, Almighty God)* dwelling inside them. The Church is not a particular church organization; the Church is all the genuine Christians together: the people. The Church is all the genuine Christians believers functioning as one, being guided by Jesus Christ through the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Everyone in the genuine Church strives to always obey Jesus Christ.

Day of Pentecost - Pentecost *(Feast of Weeks)* is an annual feast of the Jews. The day of Pentecost which is referred to in this book is the one recorded in Acts chapter 2.

Dispensation - A period of time in which the correct path of following, obeying, and interacting with God remains unchanged.

Example: During the Dispensation of the Law, following God was through obeying the Old Testament Law to the letter. In the Dispensation of Grace, we follow/obey Jesus Christ from the depth of our heart. If our heart is right, we will strive to obey all of Christ's instructions. Some things change between dispensations, and some things remain the same.

Father - A descriptive name for God.

Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit - The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are one and the same God/Deity, who we call God.

First day of the Church -The day Jesus Christ activated his Church by giving his followers the power *(he gave them the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who would constantly live inside of them)*. Since then, Jesus Christ communicates and directs his followers *(the Church)* through the Holy Ghost/Spirit. The first day of the Church was the day of Pentecost: Acts chapter 2.

Genuine Christian - A genuine Holy Ghost/Spirit filled person, is a person who is led by the Holy Ghost/Spirit:

- **who** always desires and strives to obey God, who is always striving to live and do righteously/Godly;
- **who** believes Jesus Christ is the Son of God;
- **who** has accepted Jesus Christ as their Lord *(as the one they obey)*;
- **who** has repented, who has wholeheartedly decided to turn from following sin to following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness;
- **who** has been baptized into Jesus Christ;
- **who** has received the gift of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Almighty God himself, who as the Holy Ghost/Spirit, is constantly dwelling inside him: to teach him; to lead him; to guide him; to comfort him; etc.
- **who** is following the leading of the Spirit of God.

Being human, Christians still stumble and blunder; we do not totally understand all the ways of God. However, the Holy Ghost/Spirit will be continually teaching us God's ways, and we will grow deeper into perfection as we learn and grow in God. The Holy Ghost/Spirit will be continually upgrading and comforting us the rest of our current lives.

God - The one who created and controls everything. The one who is perfectly good at all times. The one who is above everyone and everything. He is the God of Abraham. He is the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

God/Deity - The words God and Deity have the same meaning. However, the word "God" is often used as a name for God, and the word "Deity" is often used to declare someone is a god. Declaring there is only one God is declaring there is only one who is Deity.

I often put both words together: God/Deity. I do this to hopefully prevent what I call playing with words.

Heaven - The place where genuine Christians will live with God forever; a place without evil, pain, crying, sorrow, death; etc.

Holy Ghost/Spirit - A descriptive name for God. A form in which God presents himself and communicates with mankind. The Holy Ghost/Spirit is God's Spirit *(the Father's Spirit)*. We also call the Holy Ghost "Holy Spirit" and "Spirit of God".

The words **Ghost** and **Spirit** mean the same thing.
Some people say "**Holy Ghost"**;
others say "**Holy Spirit"**.

In the flesh - Living in the flesh is the opposite of living in the Spirit of God. It is following the ways of the world. It is seeking and following the desires of our flesh *(our self)* to the point we are ignoring *(neglecting to accept and obey)* God's instructions/commandments.

Jesus Christ - He is the Son of God. He is both God and mankind. The Father dwells in/inside of him, and he is full of the Holy Ghost/Spirit; thus he is the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, existing together in the body of Christ. He is the lone God of Abraham in the flesh.

Living in sin - Living in sin is the opposite of Living in God.

Manifestations - Forms in which God presents himself.

Son of Man - The human being side of Jesus Christ.

Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit - is our personal burning bush encounter with God. We actually meet God. God enters us, and remains constantly inside us, to guide and comfort us. God is a Spirit, so meeting him is different than meeting a man.

The way/ways of the world - They are the ways of most people: living and doing as one pleases, while being unconcerned about disobeying the Bible and God; not honoring God, as God; living a life that is contrary to God; not striving to obey Christ's commandments.

God is real. He reveals himself, and the truth, to people who genuinely love him from the depth of their heart. Our genuine love for God causes us to obey Jesus Christ's commandments, and causes us to love and worship him in spirit and in truth. When we have given ourselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way, we will have the Spirit of Almighty God *(the Spirit who is in Christ)* dwelling inside us. If our heart is right in God, the Spirit of God will reveal what is from God, and which beliefs are man-made. However, we still need to prayerfully study the Bible daily, striving to find and do God's will.

In the Old Testament, the people were to obey the written law of Moses to the letter of the law. Under grace, our current time period, we are to obey Jesus Christ from the depth of our heart. Our genuine love for God compels us to strive to always obey Jesus Christ. Willfully continuing to disobey Jesus Christ reveals a heart that is not properly connected to God yet.

Did you ever try to explain to a man, who was born totally blind, what green is, or what fog looks like, etc. I would not even know how to begin.

Likewise, the same kind of problem exists when we are talking about the Spirit of God, speaking in tongues, etc. You have to experience the Spirit of God, speaking in tongues, etc. before you can begin to understand, or even imagine.

First, we need to answer God's invitation by deciding that we want to love, honor, and obey God with all our heart. Then, we need to strive to draw our self close to God. To draw our self to God, we pray from the bottom of our heart, and CONVINCE GOD that we truly desire to love, honor, and obey God with all our heart. In this, we are striving to stir God to move/stir us. When God truly moves, and stirs us, is when we will start to feel the Holy Ghost/Spirit moving on us. Then we will start to understand more about God.

1
Re-examining our beliefs, using the whole Bible

We always need to prayerfully learn and grow in Bible knowledge; we do not know everything. This book encourages us to get outside the verses that support our beliefs, and prayerfully study the complete Bible. We have a tendency to travel the same Bible verses, repeatedly, until our Biblical focus is frozen to them. This can make it difficult for us to see and accept Bible verses that can appear to disagree with our beliefs. We must not mentally repress, block, or mentally discard, Scriptures that can appear to oppose our beliefs, because it is possible some of our beliefs *(which are built with interpretations and conclusions, which often contain human reasoning)* are not squarely on base. This is the reason we need to continually, prayerfully, seriously, and intensely, study the whole Bible, including all the verses that seem contrary to our beliefs. If we desire truth, we must stay inside the Holy Bible. The Holy Bible is truth; and errors are human reasoning, misinterpretations, incorrect conclusions, wrong explanations, etc. When we are prayerfully re-studying our Biblical beliefs, we are taking a fresh look at our reasoning, interpretations, and conclusions, to see if they truly stand firm in the light of the whole Bible.

We find Bible verses in the Bible that seem to point our understanding in different directions. I see this as traveling up the road of understanding. If I get too far to the left, I find Bible verses pointing me to the right. If I get to far to the right, I find Bible verses pointing me to the left. If I get too high, I find Bible verses pointing me down. If I get down too low, I find Bible verses pointing me up.

Problem: If we are traveling to the left, and ignore verses that seem to point us to the right, we could end up off the road, out in left field.

I believe all Bible verses will point in the same direction, when we totally understand them.

There are some people who do not want to honestly and prayerfully study Biblical verses which appear contrary to their beliefs. Some people get so indoctrinated into **a set of selected** Bible verses and beliefs that they refuse to see the rest of the Bible. They ignore Bible verses that appear contrary to **their set of** beliefs, because they get to feeling that if they are considering Bible verses which appear contrary to their beliefs, they feel as if they are wandering away from the truth. The whole Bible is truth, just not the selected verses on which people/churches base their beliefs.

If someone shows us Bible verses which question our beliefs, we need to prayerfully study them in the Bible. Who knows, maybe God is sending us those verses to study. Too many people repel/reject Bible verses simply because they appear to give their beliefs problems.

What often happens is people and churches strongly focus, teach, and preach repeatedly from the same Bible verses, verses they have put together to form their beliefs. When someone brings up other Bible verses which seems to question their beliefs, they get upset, especially when the verses seem to hold Biblical strength. They need to be very careful, because in their fight for their beliefs, they could be fighting against God and the Bible. For truth, we must prayerfully stay in the whole Bible.

This book challenges us to prayerfully re-examine our beliefs with the context of the entire Bible. We might surprise ourselves by discovering Bible verses that appear to contradict our beliefs. We might find we are holding to a handful of verses that appear to support our beliefs, while we are missing or avoiding other verses that seem to contradict them. Truth is found when we prayerfully study ALL the Bible verses collectively with God's assistance. Later, this book will start to teach you how to search out any Biblical belief or question with the context of the whole Bible.

We also need to be careful that nothing is being inserted into what the Bible verses are saying. Some people insert their own personal beliefs, when they are explaining what the Bible verses are saying.

When we do not know what to do - We need to realize that God really exists, and he hears and takes care of the people who truly love him from the bottom of their heart. Anytime we do not know what to do, we get down on our knees, lift our hands up towards God, and love and praise him out loud from the uttermost depth of our heart *(may be done in private)*. When GENUINE love and praise is being given to God, he takes notice of it, and he will lead us in the right direction. However, if we do not follow him, our efforts will be in vain. We need to read in the New Testament daily *(we also need the Old Testament)*, because our deep love for God stirs us to strive to find and do all of God's will.

What are missing Bible verses? They are the verses we do not use in forming our Biblical beliefs: verses we never noticed in the Bible; verses we do not comprehend; verses we choose/prefer to ignore, because they produce questions about our current beliefs; verses we avoid, because we do not like the subject; etc.

People will often accept common beliefs that are based on a few Bible verses, and mixed with human reasoning and conclusions. Then, when they come across Scriptures that seem to oppose these beliefs, they do not know what to believe about them.

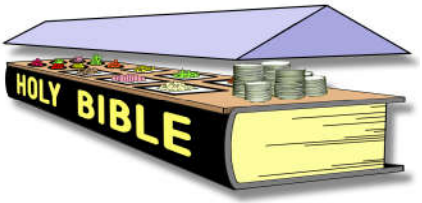


Often they will ponder, trying to understand how these Scriptures fit their beliefs, not realizing it is their beliefs which need to be changed to fit the Scriptures. Like a puzzle, some genuine Biblical truths do not seem to fit into the picture, because the incorrect beliefs which they have already inserted, are in the way. Many people ignore, or try to explain away, Scriptures that appear contrary to their beliefs. People who exult the Scriptures that appear to support a belief, and ignore Scriptures that seem to disagree with it, might have a belief which is out of Biblical context.

There are some people who do not want to accept certain Bible verses. Many people will contend against a large amount of Biblical evidence, striving to convince themselves and others, with little or no Biblical support, that we may dismiss/ignore certain Bible verses. Frequently this is done by saying, “These verses do not apply to us today; those verses were for the people who lived back in the days of the Bible.” The question is, are we honestly searching for truth, or are we accepting and fashioning an interpretation of the Bible which fits our desired beliefs? Are we holding to our beliefs no matter what other Bible verses say?

Some preachers pretend to tear pages out of their Bible, while they are teaching that other churches ignore important Bible verses. What they may not realize, they are often doing the same thing with different Bible verses.

The Bible interpreted correctly is truth. We cannot mold the truth to our liking, exclude pieces of it, or add pieces to it, and still have truth. Truth only comes one way: **as is**.



People have a tendency to treat the Bible like a buffet table. They take large portions of the things they desire, maybe a little health food, and ignore the rest. This is a way to produce beliefs which are out of Biblical context.

If we want truth, we must be willing to prayerfully and honestly study ALL the Scriptures before God on equal ground, daily. We need to go beyond the verses we use, and discover the rest of the Bible.

If we truly love God, we will be serious about serving him. God will honor our honest prayerful toil to find and follow the truth. The amount of effort we put forth, to find and do God’s will, reveals the amount of love and desire we have for God; it reveals how important God is to us.

One of the best ways to get people to understand what is truth, is to have them prayerfully search out Biblical beliefs in the Bible. Anytime we are in the Bible with a right heart, we will learn and grow in God.

Many pieces of Biblical understanding will only come to us as a direct gift from God. We need to earnestly pray, from the depth of our heart, for the correct understanding.

Are we attending the right church?

The Bible instructs Christians to regularly assemble as a group, to gather for church services. We may be attending our parent's church, or our friend's church. We may have chosen our church for convenience and what it has to offer us. We may be very happy and content with our church, but if it is not teaching/leading us into all the genuine ways of God, are we going to make it into Heaven? If going to Heaven is our goal, we need to choose our church based on its Biblical correctness and completeness: a church that teaches Biblical truth, even when it is stepping on our toes; a church which does not ignore or brush off Scriptures that may appear to be in opposition to its beliefs. If we are serious about God, we will choose our church by Biblical correctness, and not by convenience, family tradition, popularity, etc.

I suggest you ask the preacher, if he believes Noah and the Ark actually happened, if he believes in the virgin birth of Christ, etc. If he does not truly believe the things in the Bible, I would change churches.

If we need to learn how to locate Bible verses by subject/topic, chapter 5 will get us started.

If we really love God,
we will spend time prayerfully studying the Bible.

"Study to shew thyself approved unto God" 2 Timothy 2:15

"15 Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth."

"Search the scriptures" John 5:39

"39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me."

“holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation” 2 Timothy 3:15

“15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.”

“thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein” Joshua 1:8

“8 This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.”

“Blessed *is* the man”

“his delight *is* in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night” Psalms 1:1–3

“1 ¶ Blessed *is* the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful.
2 But his delight *is* in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.
3 And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.”

“With my whole heart have I sought thee”

“Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee” Psalms 119:10–12

“10 ¶ With my whole heart have I sought thee: O let me not wander from thy commandments.
11 ¶ Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.
12 ¶ Blessed *art* thou, O LORD: teach me thy statutes.”



“Thou through thy commandments hast made me wiser”

Psalms 119:97–104

“97 ¶ MEM. O how love I thy law! it *is* my meditation all the day.
98 ¶ Thou through thy commandments hast made me wiser than mine enemies: for they *are* ever with me.
99 I have more understanding than all my teachers: for thy testimonies *are* my meditation.
100 I understand more than the ancients, because I keep thy precepts.
101 ¶ I have refrained my feet from every evil way, that I might keep thy word.
102 ¶ I have not departed from thy judgments: for thou hast taught me.
103 ¶ How sweet are thy words unto my taste! *yea, sweeter* than honey to my mouth!
104 Through thy precepts I get understanding: therefore I hate every false way.”

Did you ever play a game where someone is told a story, and he tells it to another person, and that person tells it to somebody else, and on and on? When the last person tells the story out loud, it is totally different from the original story. I believe the same thing can happen over the years as people retell their beliefs; their beliefs gradually grow to be incorrect. We need to continually recheck our beliefs with the whole Bible.

We can get to the point we believe our beliefs are so correct that we will fight with all our might to defend them. Being in this state of mind, we could start using our beliefs as the standard, believing Bible verses are not interpreted correctly if they are in conflict with our beliefs. We do not want to be found translating and manipulating the Bible to be in harmony with our beliefs. Are we defending our doctrines/beliefs/traditions to the point we are fighting and deflecting Scriptures?

The authority of the Bible always overrides our beliefs, conclusions, doctrines, and traditions. The Bible is to determine our beliefs. We error when we let our beliefs shape the interpretation of the Bible.

Some people will say "What was good enough for my parents and grandparents is good enough for me". But if we know more than are parents knew, or have access to more knowledge *(books, computers, etc)*, more is required of us.

"For unto whomsoever much is given,
of him shall be much required" Luke 12:48

"48 But he that knew not, and did commit things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few *stripes*. For unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required: and to whom men have committed much, of him they will ask the more."

If God gives us more knowledge and resources to obtain a better understanding of God than he gave to our parents and grandparents, more is required of us. If we think we can avoid higher requirements by remaining Biblically uneducated, we are wrong; this is ignorance by choice, a result of a weak heart for God.

We have computers and access to all kinds of Bible reference books. Christians in the past would have craved for the Christian academic resources that are available to us.

Many beliefs have ignored



Bible verses. In this book we will study St. Peter's instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ for the remission of sins. St. Peter gave these instructions to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church, and all of the Apostles were with St. Peter as he gave them. Mary, Jesus' mother, was present too. They are the first/main instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ for the remission of sins. So why are they being ignored, and not being prominently taught by many churches?

Why do churches need to revise their doctrines, if they Biblically learn their doctrines are not perfectly correct?

Answer: Souls could be in jeopardy.

Did you know we can actually meet God? If we present ourselves to God, praising him with a right heart, God will come to us; we can actually meet God. However, God is a living Spirit, not a physical being, unless he chooses to be in the form of a physical being. Meeting God is different than meeting a man; you will feel him all over you; he is invisible. However, when you feel him, you will recognize him, and you will know the meeting is real. Through personal experiences and eye witnessing, I found the main way to meet God is through striving to love and obey him. We can contact God through genuine praise; it gets God's attention. A right heart will cause us to do all the other things of drawing ourselves closer to Jesus Christ.

How do we gain a closer relationship with God?

God is seeking for people who worship him in spirit and in truth. When we genuinely worship God in spirit and in truth, from the depth of our heart, we will get God's attention. God only accepts the words we speak from the depth of our heart.





When we get God's attention, we need to ask him for his help in giving ourselves completely to him, and tell him we want to love him more and more.

We should always praise God before we pray. When we worship him, we should praise him out loud from the depth of our heart *(may be done in private)*. We also need to prayerfully read from the New Testament every day *(we also need the Old Testament)*.

Further into this book, I talk about things which should cause many people to realize how little they truly know about the Bible, and how very important it is for their sake, to understand the things in the Bible.

Complacency - We never want to feel that we have completed our learning and growing in God, feeling like we have it all together, because complacency stops us from growing forward in God. Learning and growing in God is a never-ending effort. If we stop growing forward in God, we will begin to slide backward.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

2
Further Understanding

When people die, we hear statements like the following:

"They are in a better place";

"They are in Heaven now";

"Their suffering is over";

But the Bible tells us, a FEW will go to Heaven,
and MANY will go to the eternal lake of fire.

We need to wake-up and examine ourselves, and our beliefs, to make sure we are genuinely one of the few people who are following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way to Heaven. We may need to get up and take action.

To be able to genuinely follow Jesus Christ, we need the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside us, leading us.

We are to do more than seek God. We are to **strive** with all our heart to enter into God's salvation. Jesus Christ is God's salvation. Striving is more intense than just seeking.

"few there be that find it" Matthew 7:13–14

"13 Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide *is* the gate, and broad *is* the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat:
14 Because strait *is* the gate, and narrow *is* the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it."

**"Strive to enter in at the strait gate:
for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in,
and shall not be able"** **Strive** Luke 13:23–25

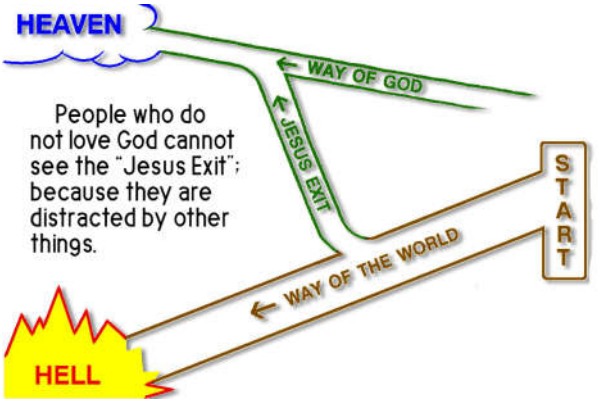
"23 ¶ Then said one unto him, Lord, are there few that be saved? And he said unto them,
24 Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able.
25 When once the master of the house is risen up, and hath shut to the door, and ye begin to stand without, and to knock at the door, saying, Lord, Lord, open unto us; and he shall answer and say unto you, I know you not whence ye are:"

"he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him" **Diligently** Hebrews 11:6

"6 But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him."

The way/ways of the world are the ways of most people: living and doing as one pleases, while being unconcerned about disobeying God; not honoring God, as God; living a life that is contrary to God; not striving to obey Christ's commandments.

Our sins separated us from God; we were all traveling to the lake of fire. When Christ died on the cross, he paid the penalty for our sins. He built us an exit, a way to escape the eternal lake of fire. This exit will allow us to exit the broad way of the world, and enter the strait and narrow way of God. Repentance is exiting sin, to follow Jesus Christ.



To exit the broad way of the world, and enter the strait and narrow way of God, we need to go through the only door, the only way, which is Jesus Christ.

If we are attempting to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness without exiting the broad way of the world, we are attempting the impossible. We cannot travel North and South at the same time.

If we are attempting to travel with Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, while we continue to look back at the ways of the world, having a desire in our heart for the sinful things we exited to follow Christ, we will stumble and fall.

"I am the way" John 14:6

"6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me."

"I am the door" John 10:9

"9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture."

"He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold"
"is a thief and a robber" John 10:1

"1 ¶ Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that entereth not by the door into the sheepfold, but climbeth up some other way, the same is a thief and a robber."

God will accept us <u>AS IS</u> *(sinful)*,
but he will <u>not</u> leave us in that condition.

When we give our sinful selves to Jesus Christ, we are entering God's Spiritual bathtub. God starts cleansing our heart, our life, our mind, etc. We are not accepted into God's family because we made ourselves clean/holy/righteous. On our own without God, we cannot make ourselves clean/holy /righteous enough.



When we truly believe on Jesus Christ, accepting him as our Lord *(as the one we will obey)*, being baptized into Jesus Christ, we are placing ourselves into God's hands knowing he will forgive us, and clean-up our lives. He will transport us from living sinfully to living righteously. Part of this cleansing takes place immediately/shortly, and part of the cleansing continues the rest of our life. Our job is to cooperate with God. If we are not being cleansed by God, we are not in his saving hands; we need to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Some people believe that following Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness is an almost impossible road to travel. This is not true when we have the Spirit of God inside us, leading us. Obeying Christ's commandments is an honest, from the bottom of our heart, striving.

How diligently, we strive to find and travel the strait and narrow way of God, reveals how much we love and desire God.

How hard are we striving to find and do the will of God?

Are we really aiming for the obedience bull's-eye, or are we merely aiming for anywhere on the target? How hard we strive reveals how much we love and desire God.



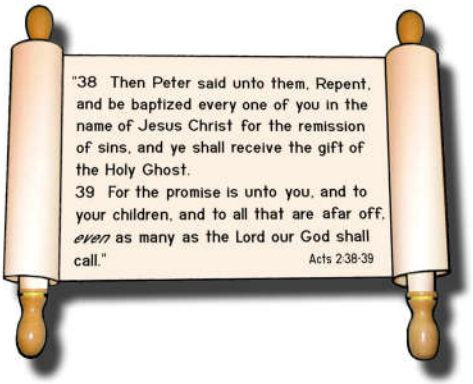
Let us give God our all.

"thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy" Mark 12:30

"30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment."

Do we love Jesus Christ? John 14:21

"21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him."



The widow gave her all

Luke 21:3–4

"3 And he said, Of a truth I say unto you, that this poor widow hath cast in more than they all:
4 For all these have of their abundance cast in unto the offerings of God: but she of her penury hath cast in all the living that she had."

Loving God, believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, is absolutely the most important thing in our life.

If we genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, we will be saved by God's grace. However, we need to follow the Bible's definition of what it means to believe on the Lord Jesus Christ. We do not want to conclude we believe when we have not met the Bible's definition of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes accepting him as our **Lord** *(as the one we obey)*. Genuine belief is only the starting point of traveling forward in the way of Jesus Christ. If we are not traveling forward, we never started.



Genuine belief always starts the dominoes falling forward.

Belief - Repentance - Water Baptism - Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit - Loving God with our ALL - Having God first place in our life - Striving to obey Jesus Christ's Commandments from the depth of our heart - Growing in all the things of God - Doing good works - And more.

Salvation cannot be earned, because we do not obtain our salvation by earning. Rather, Christ bought our salvation with his blood, which he shed for us at Calvary; and the genuine followers of Jesus Christ receive salvation **as a gift *(free)***, by the grace of God, through genuine belief and faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

Ephesians 2:8–9

"8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of God:
9 Not of works, lest any man should boast."

Not being saved by our works,
does NOT mean that we do not have to do things.

Striving to obey Jesus Christ's directives reveals our heart;
it reveals who is our Lord,
who we are actually following/obeying.

We do not earn our salvation with works; but there are plenty of things we need to do *(we need to strive to do them with a right heart)*. Not being saved by our works does not imply that we do not have to do/obey Jesus Christ's commands.

Obeying Jesus Christ's commands are not a part of an **EARNING** process, to **earn** our salvation; nevertheless, we need to obey them. We obey Jesus Christ's commands because we love God, and because we have accepted Jesus Christ as our Lord *(we have accepted Jesus Christ as the one we will obey and follow)*. Genuine Christians always strive to obey our Lord Jesus Christ's directions.

We are baptized into Jesus Christ, because baptism is a command from our Lord Jesus Christ. Baptism is NOT a part of an earning process. We join *(**put on**)* Jesus Christ by being baptized **into** Jesus Christ.

"been baptized into Christ
have put on Christ" Galatians 3:27

"27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ."

We do not put our faith in Jesus Christ, by declining to obey his commands *(example: baptism)*. If we think we can have faith in Jesus Christ, and be right in the sight of God, while we willfully choose to continue declining to obey Jesus Christ, our thinking is incorrect.

Jesus Christ commands are always for our own good; thus, when we decline to obey Jesus Christ, we harm our self.

Striving to obey Jesus Christ reveals our heart; it reveals who we are actually following/obeying. Willfully continuing to decline, to obey Christ's instructions, reveals we are not following *(obeying)* Jesus Christ; it reveals we are not properly connected to Jesus Christ yet.

We need to wholeheartedly love God,
with a thankful heart.

The Bible tells us, we do not love God as long as we are willfully choosing to continue disobeying God, which means we are still disconnected from God, we need to repent.

The Bible repeatedly tells us that the people, who love God, obey God in all things *(Striving, doing their best to always obey God)*. The Bible also tells us that people who do NOT love God, decline to obey God.

"If a man love me, he will keep my words"
(obeys Christ)

"He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings"
(disobeys Christ) John 14:23-24

"23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.
24 He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me."

Jesus Christ instructs us to be baptized.
Are we going to obey him, or willfully decline to obey him?

We accept God's grace by believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes accepting Christ as our personal **Lord** *(as the one we obey)*.

- Jesus Christ tells us to Repent *(to exit sin, and follow him)*.
- **Jesus Christ instructs us to** be Baptized in water.
- He baptizes all genuine believers with the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Do we love God enough
to always strive to follow his instructions.

Being baptized with the Holy Ghost *(God's Spirit)* is Almighty God himself entering a genuine believer to continually dwell inside him *(24/7)*: to lead him; to teach him; to comfort him; to mold him into the ways of God; to give him strength and boldness; etc. The believer's desires are changed, because God is dwelling inside him. Sinful things now appear disgusting, and the believer desires the things that are good, pure, holy, and righteous.

The Bible Informs us

1. No matter how hard we work, how good/holy we are, or how much good we get accomplished in our lifetime, we cannot EARN or HELP EARN our way into Heaven.

2. All the genuine Christians/believers obey Christ's commandments, as God is molding us into righteousness. Our deep deep love for God compels us to obey Christ's commandments, including the ones called "WORKS".

If Jesus Christ is our Lord *(the one we obey)*, we will strive to obey his instructions/commandments.

"46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?" (Luke 6:46)

Christians are sometimes called Christ's sheep, and all Christ's sheep follow *(obey)* him.

John 10:27

"27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:"

"unto all them that obey him"

Hebrews 5:9

"9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;"

"but he that doeth the will of my Father"

Matthew 7:21

"21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven."

If we are being led by the Spirit of God, we will see Christ's commandments as pure and holy instructions guiding us in the directions we are longing to go.

If we decline to obey Christ's commandments, we are rejecting Christ as our Lord *(as the one we obey)*. Christ's commandments are mostly about loving God, and about loving and caring for each other.

It is impossible to love God,
and continue to ignore obeying his commandments.

If you have a computer, with a Bible program on it, search for the places in the Bible where the words love and commandments are used in the same verse. You will find loving God and striving to obey his commandments are one and the same.

The Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of us results with us continually growing up into the righteous ways of God: obedience to God; good works; morality; Godliness; holiness; righteousness; love; gentleness; patience; etc. These things have no power to help us earn our way into Heaven; rather, they are gifts from God. They are a result of God living inside us, molding us.

The absence of growth into these attributes of God reveals the absence of God's Spirit. The absence of God's Spirit reveals we have not properly believed on the Lord Jesus Christ yet.

A person without the Spirit of God dwelling inside him lacks Spiritual sight, drive, ability, knowledge, and power, to grow into Godly righteousness. We acquire these things from God, when the Holy Ghost/Spirit is genuinely living inside of us, molding us.

"For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God" Romans 8:14



"14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."

"Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his" Romans 8:9

"9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."

"But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you" Romans 8:11

"11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you."

Sometimes God's Spirit will stir someone to give himself to Jesus Christ; many churches call this "being under conviction". If the person rejects *(pushes off)* the conviction, he will soon stop feeling the Spirit of God. When someone receives the Spirit of God *(the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*, he will have God continuously living inside him, convicting him to do God's will.

Just as the person who is under conviction to give himself to Jesus Christ, genuine Christians are continually convicted, motivated, taught, stirred, led, given strength, etc., by the Spirit of God; this is part of the process of God molding us into righteousness. Genuine Christians are God's workmanship, because God is the one who is molding and shaping the Godly attributes into us, as we cooperate with him.

"For we are his workmanship,
created in Christ Jesus unto good works" Ephesians 2:10

"10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them."

- **Following the leading of** the Spirit of God is what makes a Christian, or a church, genuine.
- When someone, or church, is following the leading of the Spirit of God, Spiritual fruit is produced in them.
- We are to identify who is a genuine Christian by the Spiritual fruit in his/her life.

Fruit of the Spirit - When the Spirit of God is constantly dwelling inside us, he is continually molding and shaping us into righteousness. The result of God's Spirit molding and shaping us into righteousness is called the fruit of the Spirit, because God's Spirit is the one who is producing the fruit in us. Every genuine Christian grows into the fruit of the Spirit.

Some fruit of the Spirit is as follows: obedience to God; Godly love; righteousness; morality; holiness; Godliness; truthfulness; faith in God; peace; good works; meekness; long-suffering; gentleness; temperance; patience; joy; goodness; etc.

We think we know what is good and righteous, but sometimes we are mistaken. What is good and righteous is determined by God's definitions, not by our definitions. We need to remember this when we are looking for the fruit of God's Spirit in people.



God will Use Fear

Sometimes God uses fear to stir people. He will open their eyes about Heaven and the eternal lake of fire. He lets them understand Christ's shed blood at Calvary offers them a way to escape the eternal lake of fire. When people realize it is all factual/real, they will run to give themselves to Jesus Christ.

When we personally get to know Jesus Christ, our fear of God turns into an enormous love for him.

We will understand God used fear to awaken us to the truth, because he loves us. He does not want us to spend eternity burning in the eternal lake of fire.



"taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel" 2 Thessalonians 1:8–9

"8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:
9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power;"

"into the fire that never shall be quenched" Mark 9:43–44

"43 And if thy hand offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched:
44 Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched."

"there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth" Matthew 13:41–42

"41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;
42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth."

"Fear him, which after he hath killed hath power to cast into hell" Luke 12:5

"5 But I will forewarn you whom ye shall fear: Fear him, which after he hath killed hath power to cast into hell; yea, I say unto you, Fear him."

Some people say it does not matter if a Christian lives in sin, because God will always forgive him. But they are very wrong; sin *(defying God)* separates us from God. The Bible informs us, a person who is living in sin *(a person who is willfully choosing to continue sinning)* is not a Christian, because it is impossible to follow sin, while following the leading of the Spirit of God. We cannot travel North and South at the same time.

A Genuine Christian is a person: who is following and striving to obey Jesus Christ in all things, who is following the leading of the Spirit of God.

Living in sin is the way of sinners. It is the opposite of living in God. It is continuing to choose/prefer to live and do as they please, living a life which is contrary to God, being unconcerned about disobeying God. It is declining to honor God, as God.

Genuine Christians do not live/dwell in the ways of sin *(choosing and preferring to live in sin)*. Genuine Christians diligently strive not to sin as we are being molded upward into righteousness by the Spirit of God. We are in the process of growing upward, yet sometimes we still mess up and do something stupid.

Fortunately, God will always forgive Christians who confess their sins to him, repent, and diligently strive not to do them again.



Non-Christians will be forgiven if they put on *(join)* Jesus Christ the Bible way, accepting Jesus Christ as their **Lord** *(as the one they will obey)*. Acts 2:38 is where we find the putting on *(joining)* instructions.

When we are saved by the Grace of God through Christ's shed blood. We gain freedom/liberty: freedom from the chains which held us in bondage to sin. This freedom /liberty allows us to serve and obey Jesus Christ without hindrance. It is not a freedom/liberty that gives us freedom to sin.

Bondage to sin - is when sin is controlling the person.

The first day of the Church was the day of Pentecost. It was seven weeks after Christ's Resurrection *(Acts 2)*.

When Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, he handed the work of preaching the Gospel, and everything which goes along with it, over to the Church. But being humans, they did not have what it takes to do the job; they needed more than human intellect.

A few days later on the day of Pentecost, God started to enter all genuine Christians. He entered and remained constantly inside them: to lead them; to teach them; to guide them; etc. With God constantly dwelling inside of them, the genuine Christians had what they needed, to do their job.

The day of Pentecost *(Acts Chapter 2)* was the first day of the Church. This was the day the Church was launched, by Christ filling his followers with the Holy Ghost/Spirit. From this point on, Christians received their instructions from God through the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Who is the Church?

The Church is all the genuine Christians, collectively, who have the Spirit of God dwelling inside of them, leading them *(the people)*.

All genuine Christians have the Spirit of God dwelling inside of them, thus the power of Almighty God lives inside every genuine Christian. The power of God *(the Holy Ghost /Spirit)* is not for Church leaders only, but for every genuine Christian.



The Spirit of God communicates with every genuine born again Christian: molding, teaching, convicting, instructing, comforting, guiding, and encouraging them in the ways of Jesus Christ.

The Spirit of God also uses the Bible, genuine Holy Ghost/Spirit led preachers/teachers, to teach and guide us into the genuine things of God. We need them to properly mature in God.

The Holy Bible was written under the anointing of the Spirit of God. When properly interpreted, the Bible and the leading of the Spirit of God are always in agreement.

On the first day of the Church, the day Jesus Christ anointed his followers with the power: the Holy Ghost/Spirit. St. Peter preached. When the people heard him preach, they were pricked in their hearts; they wanted to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ. They asked St. Peter and the other Apostles, **"what shall we do?"**. They were given the instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ: Acts 2:38.

Acts 2:38 is the first instructions of the Church for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ for the remission of sins. They were given to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church. All the Apostles were with St. Peter *(Acts 2:14)* as he gave these instructions. Mary, the mother of Jesus Christ, was present too. These instructions remain unchanged; they are our instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ.

Acts 2:37–39

"37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

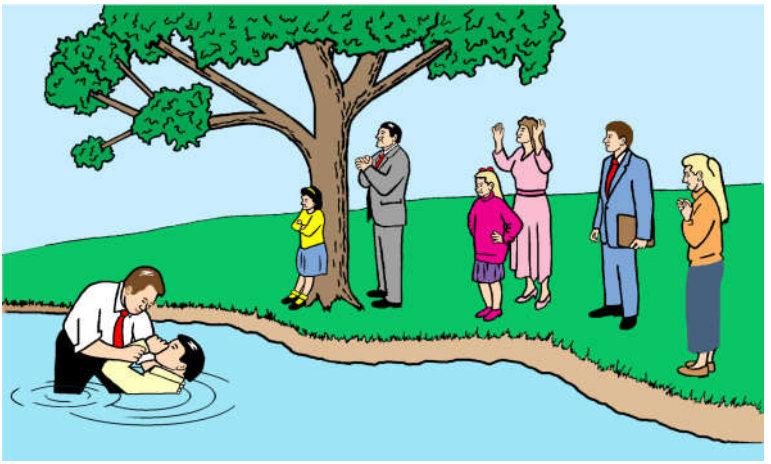


Repentance is the unbending decision to leave sin to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of Godly righteousness.

Baptism is being immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of our sins. It is our ceremony for putting on *(joining)*, entering, converting to, Jesus Christ. However, putting on *(joining)* Christ involves more than the baptism ceremony. When things are complete and genuine, we come out of the water with our sins forgiven, and when we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we are joined to Jesus Christ.

Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit is our personal burning bush encounter with God. It is God entering us, to continually live inside of us, to lead us up the path of righteousness.

We might think repent means to express sorrow over the sins we have committed, asking God to forgive us. Repentance means more than saying we are sorry. Repentance is a solid decision to exit the ways of the world, to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. If we do not truly purpose in our heart to stop sinning to follow/obey Jesus Christ, we did not repent. After putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ we must continue to follow him as we are being led by the Spirit of God.



We have many different kinds of churches.
Each church is claiming to show us the way of salvation.
Why are not all churches in agreement?
Why are there so many different beliefs?



How does the world get so many different beliefs from the same Bible?

I find the main academic reason is: many churches /people cherry-pick Bible verses, and build their preferred beliefs. Then they emphasize these Bible verses, because they appear to support their chosen beliefs. Then, they give insignificant consideration to the Bible verses that seem to diminish or appear contrary to their beliefs. We have all kinds of varied beliefs, because different churches use different Bible verses.

I find some verses seem to point our understanding to the left, while others seem to point our understanding to the right. I see this appearance of dual pointing as curbs on the edge of the road of understanding.

If I get too far to the right, I run into a curb directing me to the left. If I get too far to the left, I run into a curb directing me to the right. If I ignore the curbs, I find myself off the road out in left field, or out in right field.

Beware: If an individual desires the left, he can highlight Scriptures that appear to point to the left, while avoiding Scriptures that seem to point to the right. This person can go and preach a left sided message using his specially selected Scriptures. If we are looking for truth, we need to consider the entire Bible.

When an individual challenges our Biblical beliefs, normally Bible verses will flash into our head reassuring us we are correct and the challenger is out in left field. The verses that flashed through our head are probably a set of selected verses which we have been taught repeatedly. The entire Bible did not flash through our head. Let us take some time and see what Scriptures the challenger may have brought to the surface. We need to remember Bible is Bible. Our preferred Bible verses do not cross out other verses. We must not be afraid to prayerfully consider, with an open mind, all the verses of the Bible.

The Bible is full of statements that can appear to disagree with each other. One verse may seem to point our understanding to the right, another verse may appear to point our understanding to the left.

An example of Scriptures appearing to point in more than one direction is on the question **"Can Christians sin?"** It involves the next four Scriptures.

"If we say that we have no sin,
we deceive ourselves,
and the truth is not in us" 1 John 1:7–10

"7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.
8 ¶ If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.
9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.
10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us."

"Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin" 1 John 3:5–10

"5 And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.
6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.
7 Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous.
8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.
9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.
10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother."

"Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin" John 8:34

"34 Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin."

“whosoever is born of God sinneth not” 1 John 5:18

“18 ¶ We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.”

The purpose of looking at these four Scriptures is to show and warn you, Bible verses can be selectively chosen and interpreted to proclaim a desired belief.

If someone wants to believe we can be right with God without exiting the path of sin, he could hold high the first Scripture and ignore the rest. If someone wants to believe genuine Christians are as sinless as God, he could hold to the last three Scriptures and ignore the first. If we want truth, we need to understand all the verses are truth collectively. Anytime we ignore what a Bible verse is saying, we are ignoring truth.

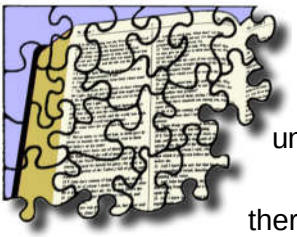
The above Scriptures seem to be saying opposite things: **(1)** Christians sin; **(2)** Christians do not sin. My studies/understanding informs me they are talking about two different categories of people and sinning.

A Spirit filled born again Christian, who is growing and following Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, longs and strives to obey God in all things. Even though he earnestly strives not to sin, sometimes he comes up short of perfection *(he messes up, sins, because he is human)*. If he sins, he confesses it to God, repents, and earnestly strives with everything that is inside of him not to sin again: 1 John 1:7–10 applies here. These verses are addressed to people who are walking in the light: who are striving to continually walk in the way of Jesus Christ.

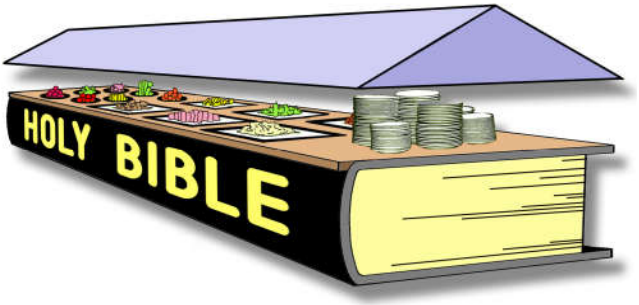


A person who is living in sin does whatever pleases him. He is not concerned about disobeying the Bible and God *(sinning)*. If someone has the Spirit of God dwelling inside of him, it is impossible for him to continue choosing to sin. 1 John 3:5–10, John 8:34, and 1 John 5:18, applies here.

Sometimes the Bible seems to point in more directions



Putting Biblical understanding together is similar to working on a puzzle. We get a piece of Biblical understanding here, and we connect it to a piece of Biblical understanding there. If we put a lot of pieces together, we see a lot of the picture. If we only use a few pieces, we only see a little part of the picture. We find many pieces to the salvation and Christian living picture: Christ's blood; believing on the Lord Jesus Christ; baptism; obedience to God; having and following the Spirit of God; righteousness; loving the truth; peace and holiness; enduring to the end; the name of “Jesus Christ”; by grace, not works; etc. If we want the whole picture, we need all the pieces. All of the pieces fit together when we finally have the understanding, the understanding that is given from God.



A good example of what many churches/people do with the Bible is to compare the Bible to a buffet table. People take large portions of the things they desire, maybe a little health food, and ignore the rest. This is a way to produce beliefs which are out of Biblical context.

As you read the next 39 Scriptures, imagine how many different beliefs could be constructed about salvation, if people use the Bible like a buffet table, choosing and ignoring Scriptures according to their preference.

Calling

Romans 10:13

"13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved."

Doing

Matthew 7:21

"21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven."

Obeying

Hebrews 5:9

"9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;"

"if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his"

Romans 8:9

"9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."

Falsely calling Jesus "Lord"

(our Lord is who we obey)

Luke 6:46

"46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?"

Following

Romans 8:14

"14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."

Not by our righteousness

Titus 3:5

"5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;"

Our Righteousness

Matthew 5:20

"20 For I say unto you, That except your righteousness shall exceed *the righteousness* of the scribes and Pharisees, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven."

Obeying

Acts 5:32

"32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him."

Belief

John 3:14–16

“14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:
15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.
16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.”

Baptism

1 Peter 3:21

“21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:”

The name of “Jesus Christ”

Acts 4:12

“12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

Good Fruit

Matthew 3:10

“10 And now also the ax is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.”

Belief / Baptism

Mark 16:16

“16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

Belief / Baptism (were baptized immediately)

Acts 16:31–33

“31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.
32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.”

Grace / Not Works

Ephesians 2:8–9

“8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of God:
9 Not of works, lest any man should boast.”

Enduring to the end

Matthew 24:13

"13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved."

"Be not deceived" (The unrighteous are not saved. However, they can give themselves to Jesus Christ, and be saved and made righteous in him.)

1 Corinthians 6:9–11

"9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,
10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.
11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God."

Confess and Believe

Romans 10:9

"9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved."

By the Gospel

1 Corinthians 15:1–2

"1 ¶ Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand;
2 By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain."

Peace and Holiness

Hebrews 12:14

"14 Follow peace with all *men*, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord:"

Abide in Christ

John 15:6

"6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast *them* into the fire, and they are burned."

Fear God / Righteousness

Acts 10:34–35

"34 ¶ Then Peter opened *his* mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons:
35 But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him."

Hear / Believe

John 5:24

“24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.”

Doing Evil *(living in sin)* reveals that we are still an unbeliever.

Galatians 5:19–21

“19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness,
20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,
21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.”

Obedience

1 John 2:3–5

“3 ¶ And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.
4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.
5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him.”

Christ's Blood

Romans 5:9

“9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.”

Belief

John 3:36

“36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.”

Convert / Be as children

Matthew 18:3

“3 And said, Verily I say unto you, Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven.”

Serving

Colossians 3:24

“24 Knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ.”

Death & Life of Christ

Romans 5:10

"10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life."

Christ is the door

John 10:9

"9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture."

Grace

Acts 15:11

"11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we shall be saved, even as they."

Love truth

2 Thessalonians 2:10

"10 And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved."

What we speak

James 1:26

"26 If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion *is* vain."

Hope

Romans 8:24

"24 For we are saved by hope: but hope that is seen is not hope: for what a man seeth, why doth he yet hope for?"

Repent ("Repent" means to exit sin and strive to obey God.)

Luke 13:3

"3 I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish."

Repent / Baptism / Receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit

Acts 2:37–39

"37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

Imagine: someone specially selecting salvation verses that contain only the things he prefers, and brushing the other verses aside. This person could use his set of specially selected Bible verses to preach an out of Biblical context message.

I hear some people teaching that all we need to do to go to Heaven is believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and put our faith in Jesus Christ, and teach that we are not required to obey anything. They believe that saying we need to obey something is declaring that Jesus Christ's shed blood is insufficient by it self. They try to interpret necessary obedience into an act of working to earn, or helping to earn, our salvation. True, we cannot help earn our salvation by doing works, but this does not eliminate the necessity to do the works. We do the works, because we love, honor, and respect God, as God.

Jesus Christ, by shedding his blood at Calvary, paid the full price for our salvation. We are offered salvation by God's grace, free of charge. We accept the free gift of our salvation by accepting Jesus Christ as our Lord and Savior. Accepting Jesus Christ as our Lord means we are accepting him as our leader, the one that we are determined to love, follow, and obey: putting our belief and faith in Jesus Christ.

Our Lord is the one we obey:
our leader, ruler, overseer, and provider.
If we are NOT obeying Jesus Christ,
we have NOT accepted him as our Lord *(leader)*.

Genuine love always produces the actions of genuine love. The Bible teaches us that loving Christ causes us to obey Christ. The people who choose not to obey Christ do so, because they do not love Christ.

"If a man love me, he will keep my words"

"He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings" John 14:23-24

"23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.
24 He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me."

Genuine Christians love their leader *(Jesus Christ)*, and our heart's desire causes us to strive to obey him. When Christ instructs us to be baptized, we love and obey Christ.

Genuine Christians obey Christ.

"to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey,
his servants ye are to whom ye obey" Romans 6:16

"16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?"

When Jesus Christ gave The Great Commission, he commanded that the believers are to be baptized. If we decline to be baptized, we are declining to obey Christ. Jesus Christ asks the question: Luke 6:46

"46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?"

We cannot earn, or help earn, our salvation by doing things *(works/efforts)*, because our salvation cannot be earned, **but this does not eliminate the necessity to do works**. We do the works, because we love, honor, obey, and respect God, as God. Doing works is a necessary part of being a Christian. God molds us into doing Godly works; We are God's workmanship.

"For we are his workmanship"

"unto good works"

"10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them."

Genuine faith is alive, and it produces works. When our faith is not producing works, James calls it dead.

James 2:26

"26 For as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also."

Not striving to do the works of God *(declining to do God's will)* reveals that our belief and faith in Jesus Christ is NOT the correct type.

Our genuine love, belief, and faith in Jesus Christ causes us to always strive to do all the things Christ tells us to do *(including the works)*.

Jesus Christ tells us to repent *(an unbending decision to stop sinning to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness)*, and be baptized *(the ceremony part of putting on [joining] Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins)*. We obey Jesus Christ and do it, and God fills us with his Spirit *(the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*, who will lead us into obeying Jesus Christ in all things. *(See St. Peter's explanation. below↓)*

"Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ" Acts 2:38

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost."

"If a man love me, he will keep my words" (will obey Christ) John 14:23

"23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him."

"they follow me" (they obey) John 10:27

"27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:"

"is a liar" 1 John 2:4

"4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him."

"even as he is pure" 1 John 3:3

"3 And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure."

"For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God" Romans 8:14

"14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."

If we genuinely repent, and are properly baptized into Christ, God will place the Holy Ghost/Spirit inside of us. The Holy Ghost/Spirit will be continuously molding us into a person who obeys God, a person who does good and lives righteously. Obeying Christ's commandments, doing good works, living righteously, etc., is not about earning our way into Heaven; they are the results of having the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside us, molding us into righteousness. If we have the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of us, we will have these results.

Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, doing the will of God, and obeying Christ's commandments are all welded together. We are either striving to obey Jesus Christ's commandments to the best of our ability, or we are ignoring them. If we willfully continue choosing to ignore Christ's commandments, we are not a genuine believer.

Christ's commandments are about loving God,
and loving and caring for each other.
They are about doing the right things.

Different churches hold different interpretations for the same Bible verses. This results with many different beliefs. Since some of the beliefs oppose other beliefs, some of the beliefs are incorrect. This is one reason why we need to sincerely pray for God's assistance as we diligently strive to find and understand the truth of the Bible.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

4
The Christian Holy Bible is different from other books, because the Bible is anointed by God.

(This means God personally speaks to our heart and mind as we read the Bible, with a right heart.)

How can we tell that the Bible is truly the word of God? One of the reasons is by the number of people whose lives have been truly changed by God, as they have prayerfully read and studied the Bible with a right heart *(changed, from a mean, unkind, and nasty person, into a good person who is full of love for God and everyone)*. No other book has power to direct someone directly to God, who will change a person into a good person, like the Bible does. However, the only way, a person will be truly directed to God to be made good, is if he is sincerely searching for God with a right heart.

If we do not have a right heart for God, we will not be able to see, perceive, or truly understand many things about God; we might not even realize that God truly exists.

God communicates with genuine Christians' hearts through the Holy Spirit and the Bible. God is in the Bible, teaching, and giving understanding to the people who genuinely wholeheartedly love God. If we genuinely love God, and truly desire to understand the Bible for the purpose of obeying God, God will start talking to our hearts as we prayerfully read the Bible daily, leading us into genuinely understanding the things of God, teaching us how to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ, transforming us into a God loving person, who is Godly, righteous, kind, and full of love for everyone. As we are reading the Bible with a right heart, God will lovingly motivate, stir, and convict us to do the correct things. No other book, but the Holy Bible, has this kind of life changing power, changing people into God loving and righteous living people: this is because God himself speaks to our hearts as we read the Bible with a right heart. We can say the Christian Holy Bible is a living book, because Almighty God is inside it.

Other books, which are not concerning God, can give us some understanding, but they do not change the heart and core of our character into greatly desiring to be good and righteous, as God through the Bible changes us.

There are some anti-God books. If someone holds firm to anti-God teachings, these teachings will change the person's character into being mean, nasty, evil, and full of hate.

God is not always instant; we should expect to grow into understanding God, and the things which God teaches us through the Bible, over the years. If we do not genuinely love God, God will not open our eyes to see some of the things we need to know about God. How much time and effort we put into prayerfully reading and studying the Bible with a right heart, reveals how much we truly love and desire God.

All genuine Christians believe the Bible. Genuine Christians believe Jesus Christ is the Son of God. The Father dwells in/inside his Son *(Jesus Christ)*. God often speaks to us through his Son.

"the Father that dwelleth in me" John 14:7–11

"7 If ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also: and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him.
8 Philip saith unto him, Lord, shew us the Father, and it sufficeth us.
9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou *then*, Shew us the Father?
10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.
11 Believe me that I *am* in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very works' sake."



All genuine Christians are "Bible believing Christians"

God gave us an instruction book which we call the Holy Bible. In it, God teaches us what we are to do, and what we are not to do. It teaches us about God, and how God wants us to live. God made us, so he knows what is best for us. Obeying the teachings of God, obeying the teachings of the Bible, will cause us to win big-time, and cause us to do what is good for us and others.

Choosing to ignore the teachings of God in the Bible, replacing them with human reasoning, will separate us from God and cause us to lose big-time, and will destroy us. If we do not repent and give ourselves totally to Jesus Christ the Bible way, we will continue to stay separated from God. After we die, our separation from God, and the enormous destruction which the separation causes, will continue forever.

God is the one who declares what is good. People do not have the authority or power to override God and decide and change what is good and what is evil. Just because most people approve of doing certain sins, does not justify them. Just because the government declares we have a right to do them, does not justify them. On Judgment day we will be judged according to God's approval/disapproval. Without the Bible, we would not even know which things are good, and which things are evil. Because what is good and what is evil is determined by God's will. Without the Bible, we would not know how to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ to receive a pardon for the sins we have committed.

All my life I have been around the Bible. When I was growing up, my dad would repeatedly read the whole Bible to us, a chapter every night before we ate supper. It seemed he was always studying the Bible, and he would talk about what he learned. Every week we would go to Sunday School, and to the church worship service, and to Wednesday night Bible Study. In the summer I would go to Daily Vacation Bible School. The Bible was a large part of my life.

The Bible is truth, when correctly understood.

Throughout my life, I have watched things taught in the Bible playing out in real life. I know the Bible is truth, because I see things happening the way the Bible says they will happen *(certain actions of people produce certain consequences)*. I have learned, if the Bible says it, it will happen; maybe not as we envision it, but it will happen. However, people need to correctly understand the Bible to properly connect the Bible to the things which are happening.

Going to the Bible, with a God desiring heart, is the correct place to go to find the truth, but many people distance themselves from the Bible *(distance themselves from the truth)*. Many people hate the Bible, because the Bible greatly condemns some of the things they are doing, and they do not want to feel guilty about doing them. But how is this going to stand on Judgment Day?

When people talk about religion, they use the word "beliefs", and a lot of religious things are "beliefs" *(opinions)*. The Christian Holy Bible is often taken out of context, twisted, bent, and misunderstood. But when the Holy Bible is properly understood, it is not an opinion; rather, it is a solid fact; it is reality. When the Bible tells us if we continue doing certain things we will end up in the eternal lake of fire; it is a fact. Judgment Day is reality.

It is extremely easy to misunderstand the Bible, by getting things out of context, or corrupting it by adding our human reasoning and understanding into the teachings of the Bible. Many times, when the Holy Bible is talking about something, people think it is talking about something else. We need to correctly understand the Bible in order to see reality. Much of understanding the will of God is past intellectual study, and only comes as a gift from God through the Holy Ghost /Spirit, as we read the Bible with a right heart. We need to read the Bible daily. If our heart is right towards God, God will lead us to understand the things we need to know.



Some people try to justify their sinning by selecting particular phrases here and there in the Bible, and ignoring other phrases. Then they use these selected phrases out of context, attempting to justify their sinning. They often twist and bend these words and phrases, then add human reasoning to them, so the words and phrases appear to say what they want them to say. Some people try in vain to reduce the Bible *(God's Word)* down to a human inspired book. Mankind wrote God's instructions on paper, but the instructions are from God.

If we choose/prefer to be rebellious, by not following God's instructions, we will end up destroying ourselves. Every time we do things contrary to the Bible *(contrary to God)*, we cause our self and others great pain of some kind.

Illustration: A man bought a new car. It came with an instruction manual on how to care and maintain it. But the man said to himself, "Nobody is going to tell me what to do." The instruction book said to put gas in the tank, but the rebellious man put diesel fuel in it; he left half of the air out of his tires to get a softer ride; and he drove the car without oil. His rebellion caused him to destroy his new car.

Likewise: If we decline to follow our God given instruction manual *(the Holy Bible)*, we will destroy ourselves.



Genuine Christians continue to prayerfully scrutinize the Bible, striving to find and obey God's instructions, as they prayerfully follow the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. If we prayerfully read and study the whole Bible repeatedly, with a right heart towards God, we will start to construct a knowledge base of truth in us, which will help us identify false teaching and preaching.

Newcomers should start by reading the New Testament many times, because the New Testament is where we find our main instructions for our current time period *(we also need the Old Testament, but study the New Testament first)*.

The Old Testament contains instructions for us, but it also contains instructions which ended when Christ died on the cross *(largely the instructions concerning Old Testament sacrifices)*. An unlearned person might read some of the instructions that have ended, think they apply to him, and try to obey them. Newcomers need to read the New Testament a number of times *(getting to understand the New Testament)*, so they are more knowledgeable when they start reading the Old Testament. This will help them discern which instructions in the Old Testament belong to us today.

It is better for us to be a poor, despised, persecuted person on our way to Heaven; then to be a rich, powerful, and respected person on our way to the eternal lake of fire.

On Judgment Day, Jesus Christ will judge us according to the Christian Holy Bible. It will determine where we will live for eternity?

For all levels of learning

When we went to school, we advanced into harder and deeper books as we grew in knowledge. The Bible is one book for all levels of Godly learning, from preschool to Post doctorate. Every time we prayerfully read the Holy Bible with a right heart, we grow into a deeper understanding of God and reality.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

5
How to locate information in the Bible, and how to study it.

Studying the Bible is not comparable to studying other books. To understand the heart and core of the Bible, God must give us the understanding as a gift.

If we truly love God, and diligently seek him from the depth of our heart, God will start giving us understanding. God will allow us to understand enough of the Bible to realize we need to accept Jesus Christ as our Lord *(as the one we obey)*. After we have obeyed Acts 2:38, including receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit, Almighty God will be dwelling inside us. God as the Holy Ghost/Spirit will cause us to start understanding the heart and core of the Bible.

It is possible for us to be highly educated in Bible Colleges and still not be able to comprehend some of the basic things of God. We can be an uneducated Holy Ghost/Spirit filled person, or child, with a right heart towards God who understands the things of God, because God has placed the understanding inside us. Academic study without the Holy Ghost/Spirit results with an incomplete understanding.

God gives understanding to people who love him with a right heart,
and he hides the understanding from others.
(Read about this in the next few pages)

"thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes" Luke 10:21–23

"21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.
22 All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and *he* to whom the Son will reveal *him*.
23 And he turned him unto *his* disciples, and said privately, Blessed *are* the eyes which see the things that ye see:"

“he cannot see” (Look up the word “see”, for John 3:3, in a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.) John 3:3

“3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”

Jesus Christ spoke in parables, so some people would not understand. Matthew 13:10–16

“10 And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables?
11 He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given.
12 For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath.
13 Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.
14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:
15 For this people’s heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.
16 But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear.”

“for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven” Matthew 16:15–17

“15 He saith unto them, But whom say ye that I am?
16 And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.
17 And Jesus answered and said unto him, Blessed art thou, Simon Barjona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed *it* unto thee, but my Father which is in heaven.”

“he will guide you into all truth” John 16:13

“13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.”

“he that loveth me”
“and will manifest myself to him” John 14:21

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

“If any man will do his will,
he shall know of the doctrine,
whether it be of God” John 7:17

“17 If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or *whether* I speak of myself.”

“Draw nigh to God,
and he will draw nigh to you” James 4:8

“8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse *your* hands, *ye* sinners; and purify *your* hearts, *ye* double minded.”

“If a man love me”
“and make our abode with him” John 14:23

“23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.”

“them that diligently seek him” Hebrews 11:6

“6 But without faith *it is* impossible to please *him*: for he that cometh to God must believe that he is, and *that* he is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him.”

We need to prepare for studying the Bible with prayer and worship. We should get down on our knees, raise our hands high toward God, and praise him out loud from the depth of our heart *(this may be done in private)*. If we genuinely praise/worship God in spirit and in truth, God will come to us. God is seeking true worshipers.

“for the Father seeketh such to worship him” John 4:23–24

“23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.
24 God *is* a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship *him* in spirit and in truth.”

Checking our beliefs

When I went to school, I was taught to check my mathematics. I was taught how to check my multiplication using subtraction, addition, and division. If I figured a multiplication problem without checking it, I might have the wrong answer. If I checked my answer by division, addition, and subtraction, and it agreed every time, it was considered I proved my answer correct.

Likewise: We need to check our understanding of individual Bible verses. We need to find all the verses on the subject, then compare them to each other. If all the verses agree, it is considered that we have the correct understanding.

We need to know how to use the Bible. If we have a question, we need to know how and where to find the answer. We do not have time to read the Bible from cover to cover every time we have a question. When we want to understand what the Bible declares about a specific subject, most of the time, we will find the information is scattered throughout the Bible. How can we find all the information and put it together? We have research books to point us to the verses we need, mainly an **exhaustive** concordance.

Words have multiple definitions. Are we using the correct meaning for the words in the Bible? The New Testament was translated from Greek. The Old Testament was translated from Hebrew. The definitions of today's English words may not perfectly parallel the definitions of the Greek and Hebrew words. English words slowly change their meaning over the years. We may have to get our New/Old Testament Word Study Dictionaries, and compare the definitions of the Greek and Hebrew words before they were translated into English.

I use the King James Version Bible; I was raised on it, and it seems the majority of books for aiding Bible research are keyed to this version. The complaint about the King James Version is its outdated English. However, the more we use it, the more the outdated English becomes familiar. The outdated English results with us looking up more words in a New/Old Testament Word Study Dictionary,

because some of the words in the outdated English have changed their meaning. It is necessary to use these dictionaries for all versions/translations of the Bible. Even the words in the newer translations of the Bible may not perfectly match the definitions of the Greek and Hebrew words. Use these dictionaries when something does not sound right, or when a doctrine/belief is based on a few words, etc. An **exhaustive** concordance with a numbering system can help in matching words to their definitions.

Beware: We have many translations/versions of the Bible. When someone is interpreting the Bible, they can choose words that push the interpretation toward their personal beliefs without realizing it. We need accuracy.

We can locate the same information using a computer with an appropriate Bible program. The main advantage of using a computer is saving time: the time of handling books, and the turning of pages. However, sincere research still involves serious time in prayer and earnest thinking.

Basic books we should have

- An Authorized King James Version Bible
- An Exhaustive Concordance with a Greek/Hebrew word numbering system.
- A New Testament Word Study Dictionary, hopefully using the same numbering system.
- An Old Testament Word Study Dictionary, hopefully using the same numbering system.

The first book we should have is an Authorized King James Version Bible. It has been the primary protestant English Bible for hundreds of years. Many of the main Bible reference books are keyed to this version.

We need to make sure the Bible maintains the italicized words *(a few words in the Bible, here and there, should be in italic)*. These are words which were added to the Bible when they translated it into English. The action of the translators marking these words tells me they were extremely concerned about accuracy.

The Bible is a collection of 66 books, divided into two sections. The first 39 books are the Old Testament. The remaining 27 books are the New Testament.

In order to properly understand the Bible, we need to understand its basic layout/framework. We need to understand the purpose of each book, and to whom the words were addressed, Etc.

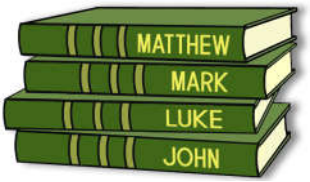
We can find Study Bibles with this information and much more inserted into them. This information is not part of the Scriptures; it is information inserted inside the Bible *(the book)* for convenience. We need to be aware, a good portion of this additional information could be the author's opinions. We do not want to risk our soul on the additional information being totally correct. It is simply someone's effort to help us understand the Bible.

The Old Testament, for a large part, is information about the Israelites living under the dispensation of the Law. We find information in the Old Testament which points to and identifies Christ. We can obtain much knowledge from the Old Testament, especially about understanding God's feelings, actions, etc. However, newcomers should start by reading the New Testament about a dozen times.

The New Testament is the heart and the core of information for people serving God under Grace *(our current time period)*.

Only the genuine Bible text, as interpreted by the Spirit of God, is completely trustworthy.

Christ fulfilled the Law at Calvary. Now with the Law fulfilled, we are living under God's Grace. The New Testament is laid out as follows:



The first four books in the New Testament are biographies of Jesus Christ. These books, for the most part, extend from his birth to his ascension up into heaven. They record his actions and teachings.

After these four books end, at the ascension of Christ, the book "**Acts** of the Apostles" continues to record the events of the Church.





Romans through Jude are letters. They are written instructions which were sent to a church or a Christian. We are actually reading someone's mail. Why? The instructions written to them apply to us.

The last book of the New Testament is "Revelation". We need to read this book even though it is very hard to understand.



The King James Version Bible is considered a top version of the Bible for accuracy by many people, but it is written in old English. The meaning of some words have changed over the years, so compare the KJV Bible to other word to word translations of the Bible. This will help find words which the meanings have changed. Then, look up the words in the Old/New Word Study Dictionaries for a better understanding of the words, to see which words are more accurate.

The second book we need is called an **exhaustive** concordance. It is the main book for finding things in the Bible. It will be a huge book, because it contains a huge amount of information. Do not be satisfied with partial concordances in Bibles or smaller books; these partial concordances contain only some of the references. They can easily be bias, because someone has to choose which references go into it. An accurate impartial search depends on having all the references, all the pieces. This is why we need an **exhaustive** concordance which contains all the references. We should try to obtain one with large print. It is to our advantage if the concordance has a word numbering system: a number assigned to each word. These numbers can simplify further research.

One purpose of the concordance is to be able to locate Bible verses by subject. If we look up the word "love" in an **exhaustive** concordance, it will give us a list of every place in the Bible where the word "love" is found.

If we want to find all the Bible verses pertaining to a particular subject, we start by making a list of words. If we want to study divorce, we make a list of all the related words that come to our mind: "divorce"; "marriage"; etc. Then we locate these words in our concordance, which gives us lists of Bible verses to consider. While we are reading these verses, we will often find additional words to add to our list.

We might find several variations of a word. If we want to read what the Bible declares about baptism, we will need to study all the verses listed under several forms of the word: baptism; baptisms; Baptist; Baptist's; baptize; baptized; baptizest; baptizing. While reading these verses, we may come across additional words related to baptism: water; wash; remission *(for remission of sins)*; etc. Then we need to prayerfully read the verses listed under these words, and prayerfully study them in their context.

Searching the Bible with the help of an exhaustive concordance, not a partial one, is honorable. It does not take sides; it is impartial. An **exhaustive** concordance tells us where the verses are in the Bible; it does not try to interpret them. We can do the same type of word search on a computer with an appropriate Bible program.

Opinion: An **exhaustive** concordance does better in finding all the verses, due to the different spellings and different forms of the words.

Beware: **Not everything** we read in reference books is factual. We will find a mixture of facts, varied beliefs, opinions, and conclusions. We need God's guidance, to sense, sort, and check this information, to separate facts from opinions. Let us be sure to prayerfully seek God's guidance with a sincere heart.

The third book we should have is a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.

The New Testament was translated from Greek into English. This dictionary explains the meaning of individual Greek words, so we can understand the definition of a Greek word before it was translated into English. Often the definitions of the English words do not perfectly match the definitions of the Greek words.

The Dictionary is written in English, not Greek. The use of this book is simplified if the concordance and dictionary use the same numbering system.

I prefer to use a New Testament Word Study Dictionary that lists individual words *(it is more specific)*, instead of a dictionary that groups similar words.

Our fourth book should be an Old Testament word study dictionary. This is the same type of dictionary, but for the Hebrew words of the Old Testament. The use of this book is simplified if the concordance and dictionary use the same numbering system.

With the Bible and these research books, we are ready to prayerfully study about anything taught in the Bible. Many other books are available to complement our research: Bible Dictionaries; Bible Commentaries; Bible Atlas; Bible Encyclopedias; Theology Dictionaries; and many others. Let us start building our library.



Ask God with Faith James 1:5

"5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him."

Pray, **asking** God to give us an answer. **Seek** in the Scriptures until we find the answer. Keep **knocking** on the door of Spiritual understanding, until the door is open.

“Ask” “seek” “knock” Luke 11:9–10

“9 And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.
10 For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.”

“he will guide you into all truth” John 16:13

13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.”

We spend all kinds of time learning how to work our computer, or to master a piano, etc. How much time are we willing to put into learning the things of God? Our life has a way of revealing which things are the most important to us. Are we really putting God first?

Let us be Aware of the following:

Studying the Bible alone, without God

If we study the Bible without God's assistance, it is totally impossible for us to comprehend the real and deeper meaning of the Scriptures. We must prayerfully enlist God's help, or our studying will be in vain.

Our heart / Our purpose

God will help us if our heart is in the right place, and we are prayerfully studying for the right reasons. Let our heart's desire be to understand God's word for the purpose of obeying him better.

Study the Bible in context, and by subject

We need to read in the Bible every day. We need to read the Bible from cover to cover repeatedly. We also need to study the things of God by individual subjects/topics. We need to always pray and read multiple Scriptures, studying them in their context.

Misunderstanding what some words mean

Words have various meanings. When we translate one language into another, the meaning of the words may not perfectly parallel each other. Even our English words keep evolving *(their meanings slowly change)*.

When we are debating beliefs, we need to make sure we understand the other side's definitions of words, phrases, and jargon being used in the debate, and vice versa. We may be surprised to see how often the other person does not truly comprehend what we are saying. A dispute over a Christian belief can have more to do with terminology than with the belief.

Who are the Biblical instructions instructing?

We need to understand the blueprint of the Bible, or we could be following instructions that do not belong to us. When the Bible says **"you"**, we need to recognize who the instructions are for:

You, the born again Christian?
You, Timothy?
You, the Israelites?
You, the reader?
You, all the people of the world? Etc.

Different verses are for different people. We need to learn/recognize which instructions are for us, and how verses which are addressed to other people, apply to us.

Everything is not mentioned in every Biblical account

In the Bible, words and phrases are often used to represent a larger picture.

People do not communicate with complete details. When we speak, we do not mention totally everything. We tell the highlights, and expect the hearer to automatically understand the rest.

Illustration: When Billy asked his grandma "What are we going to eat on Thanksgiving?", she replied "Turkey". Though she only mentioned turkey, but Billy automatically understood she would have many other kinds of food and beverages too.

Example: Acts 16:31

"31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house."

When the Bible says "Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ", it is naming one thing, belief, to represent the acceptance of Christ and the whole realm of Christianity. It is like Billy's grandma saying "turkey". We are expected to understand the whole realm of Christianity comes along with believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, and it concludes we are going to proceed forward following/obeying the instructions of Christ.

Belief is welded to all the other elements/parts of Christianity. It is impossible for us to genuinely believe on Christ, and ignore the other components of Christianity.

Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ is the starting point of following Jesus Christ. If we do not move forward in the things of Jesus Christ, we never started. After believing, we start to move forward by obeying Acts 2:38.

Biblical instructions do not always start at point zero

Illustration: Several people asked for road directions to the big event. The directions varied, because the people were starting their trip from different locations.

Likewise: When we are reading instructions in the New Testament being given to individuals and/or churches *(the epistles)*, we need to know where these people were in their walk with God. You see, we may have to advance to the same location in God before the same instructions would be correct for us.

If the road directions are from Dayton to the special event, we need to be at Dayton for those particular directions to be correct.

We find directions in the Bible given to born again Christians. We may have to become a genuine born again Christian before these directions are correct for us.

Closed Mindedness

When it comes to our Biblical beliefs, we can easily get closed minded. We go to church; we are repeatedly taught what the pastor believes are solid Bible doctrines. Over the years, because we are repeatedly taught these beliefs and their supporting Scriptures, they get welded into our innermost being. If we are not careful, we can get to the point we are rejecting/deflecting other Bible verses simply because they appear to contradict our beliefs. If we find some verses which seem to disagree with our beliefs, we need to remember they are Bible *(truth)* too.

If someone shows us Bible verses that appear to oppose our beliefs, or questions our beliefs, let us take time to prayerfully and Biblically study these verses. If we automatically deflect Bible verses that seem to disagree with our beliefs, we are living dangerously. We could be pushing away Biblical instructions that are essential for us. We do not know everything.

Remember: If we want truth, we must stay inside the Bible.

Overly Open Mindedness

Overly open Mindedness is when we believe what someone tells us, just because it sounds right, without doing our prayerful Biblical research.

If we do not put enough time into sincere prayer and honorable Bible study, we can be gullible to believe anything that sounds good. We need to touch God in sincere prayer, and learn how to honorably research beliefs in the Bible. We need to know which beliefs to embrace, and which beliefs to eliminate.

Preferred beliefs, and undesired beliefs

When the Bible tells us to do things we like to do, we say “Amen”. When the Bible instructs us to do things we do not want to do, many people will come up with all kinds of reasons to convince themselves and others why the Biblical instructions do not pertain to us today.

It is extremely dangerous to decide what is right and wrong; then, search the Bible for words and phrases to support our beliefs. It seems we can find words and phrases in the Bible to justify or condemn, to our own satisfaction, just about anything.

We might be able to convince ourselves and others our preferred beliefs are Biblically correct, by strongly accenting a few words in a few Bible verses. We need to be careful, because we or someone else could have put together *(manufactured)* our/their own thing by selecting bits and pieces of the Bible.

When building Biblical support for our preferred beliefs, we need to be very careful, because we can unknowingly be picking and bending the Scriptures to fit our beliefs.

We tend to look long and deep at the verses that appear to support our preferred beliefs, and skim over and deflect verses that seem to give our beliefs problems. Why? We are in defense mode: arms up *(in defense)*, defending our beliefs against possible revision.

A pastor and his wife were on their way to a debate. Two pastors were going to debate their contrary beliefs in front of the church members. The pastor's wife asked her husband, "What are we going to do if the other church wins the debate?" He replied, "We will join their church."

If we are pretending parts of the Bible do not exist, or if we are convincing ourselves some Bible verses do not mean what they appear to be saying, we probably do not want to understand parts of the Bible. However, verses can be misunderstood or read out of Biblical context. It is possible some verses are not saying what we think they are saying.

We need to prayerfully read the Bible, while being on guard for the strong human tendency to believe what we want to believe, and the human tendency to deflect beliefs that seem undesirable to us.

What will we do if someone shows us Bible verses that seem to indicate our preferred beliefs are incorrect? Too many of us will simply deflect these Bible verses without prayerfully studying them, and continue to believe what we want to believe. We resist and deflect Bible verses, because we think we know better. We need to remember Bible is Bible.

I believe everyone's beliefs are continuously changing /growing, as we prayerfully and honestly study the whole Bible continuously. Our beliefs change and grow as we become better educated in God.

Getting outside the Bible

The Bible is truth. If we get outside the Bible, we are getting outside the truth. We may be surprised to see how many beliefs are accepted by the multitudes, yet possess little or no Biblical support. Before we accept a belief, we need to know if it is a genuine Biblical belief.

In a few pages we will come to a section titled Putting it on Paper; it will teach us how to determine the amount of Biblical support a belief holds.

Note: To be able to truly understand the Spiritual truths of the Bible, we need to have God *(the Holy Ghost/Spirit)* dwelling inside us, teaching us.

Out of context

We can easily get out of Biblical context when our studies are too brief, or when someone gives us a set of specially selected verses, etc. When we only study some of the verses pertaining to the belief/topic, we may only see part of the picture. If we only have part of the picture, we can come to an incorrect conclusion.

We need to make sure we are reading Bible verses in their context. We need to use an **exhaustive** concordance, to make sure we are studying all the verses on the subject.

Checking and verifying beliefs

We need to learn to get our **exhaustive** concordance, and find all the Scriptures we can on the subject. We need to prayerfully study all the verses, and read enough verses at each location, so we can grasp the context. We need to compare all the Bible verses to see if we get the same understanding from every Scripture.

Be aware of true statements with off-base explanations

The preacher said "All you have to do is believe on the Lord Jesus Christ". Then he gave his personal explanation of what it means to believe on the Lord Jesus Christ. The problem was his personal explanation did not agree with the Bible's definition of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Beware: People can make true statements, and then interpret them with off-base explanations.

Over Emphasizing

When we show people Bible verses to correct their beliefs, we have a tendency to super emphasize these verses. We need to be careful; we do not want to over emphasize them to the point we are getting things out of Biblical balance.

Reading things into the Scriptures

Example: Someone could take words from the Bible like "the sun rose", "the sun stood still", "the sun was going down", and say, "The Bible declares the sun moves".

These words were not intended to be solar system education; these words merely paint a picture of a Biblical event. We still talk like the sun sets and rises even though we know it is the earth rotating.

We need to make sure we are not reading things into the Scriptures by interpreting Bible verses to be saying more than their intended communication.



Going with the flow

We can easily go to church and flow along with it. However, if our church is flowing in the wrong direction, we need to change churches.

We need to know how to prayerfully study the Bible, to make sure we are flowing with Jesus Christ.

Blindly following the path of our parents

If we are following our parent's beliefs, we still need to prayerfully study them. We need to see how they compare with the whole Bible.

Do not trust numbers or tradition

Some people presume they are safe if they stay in the middle of the road. They figure they are safe if they believe and do the same things as people have generally done for hundreds of years, and if they ignore the beliefs to the far left, and to the far right.

Just because a belief is the middle of the road, just because it has been the traditional belief for thousands of years, or just because most people believe it, does not make it Biblically correct. If we want accuracy, we will prayerfully study the Bible with a right heart.

Prejudging

If we push the interpretation of the Scriptures to fit our preferred beliefs, we are bias.

Some things in Bible reference books are incorrect, or only partly correct.

A portion of most Bible reference books is the author's beliefs and opinions. Authors often disagree; one reference book may say "it is hot", and another reference book may say "it is cold".

I refer to a large portion of reference books, collectively, as The fishing pond. When I have trouble understanding something, I go fishing in reference books to see what other people say about it. We absolutely need the Spirit of God guiding us to find truth. Without the Spirit of God guiding us, we will end up selecting/guessing things using our intellect.

Putting it on paper

When we are studying a Biblical belief, we need to sort things on sheets of paper.

First sheet List every Bible verse for the belief that gives us a solid Biblical fact *(Does not need a conclusion /assumption)*.

Second sheet List verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from two or more agreeing Bible verses.

Third sheet List verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from one Bible verse. *(When a belief is drawn from only one Bible verse, the belief cannot be crossed checked [confirmed] with other Bible verses.)*

Fourth sheet List every Bible verse that can appear to be in opposition or give problems to the belief?

Fifth sheet List every belief, thought, or idea, that is void of Biblical support. Be sure to label this paper "No Biblical Support".

These papers give us an excellent visual for seeing how much Biblical evidence/support a belief holds. It is surprising how much understanding comes together when it is on paper. We need to use paper because our minds tend to remember the high points and what we want to remember, while we forget much of what was said, read, and taught. These paper records can retain everything much better than our minds.

Illustration: The Biblical debate started. The first man was big, good looking, muscular, educated, and smoothly delivered his presentation with much charisma and conviction. The second man was short, fat, thick glasses, pens in his pocket, and he nervously stumbled through his presentation. The crowd thought the first man easily won the debate.

John took notes listing the points made by each man, along with the Scriptures they quoted. He took this information, now out of its charismatic atmosphere, and prayerfully studied the bare facts. John did not rely on appearance or the speaker's diplomas. He established which beliefs were Biblically correct by prayerfully studying them in the Bible.

Many people can be taken in with smooth persuasive speaking, because it sounds great, and appears correct. However, sounding right, and being right, can be two different things.

If we do our paper lists, we will have an extremely revealing visual memory. These papers will show how much Biblical support we have for the belief, and how much support is merely human logic, opinions, etc. If we really want to know which beliefs are Biblically correct, we need to do these papers.

All parts of Christianity are linked together.

All parts of Christianity are linked together like a chain. We cannot genuinely pick up one link without picking up the whole chain.



Illustration: At one time people thought heavier objects fell faster than lighter ones. They thought it was common sense. Then Galileo put it to the test, proving their common sense was incorrect.

Likewise: We can be taught beliefs about God all our life, and these beliefs can appear 100% Biblically correct. But just as Galileo put common sense to the test, we need to put our beliefs through the Bible test. We need to study the Bible unbiasedly, prayerfully, and impartially. We need to use an **exhaustive** concordance, and compare our beliefs to the rest of the Bible. We may be surprised to find some of our beliefs do not stand as Biblically firm as we thought.

We need to remember, understanding comes from God.

“seek, and ye shall find” Luke 11:9–10

“9 And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.
10 For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.”

Ask God, having faith James 1:5

“5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all *men* liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.”

“he will guide you into all truth” John 16:13

“13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.”

A simple-thinking uneducated genuine Christian can be very knowledgeable in the things of God, because he is constantly being given understanding from the Spirit of God. God's Spirit, who dwells inside him, teaches, leads, and guides him continually.

“thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent” Matthew 11:25–26

“25 ¶ At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes.
26 Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in thy sight.”

How diligently we strive to find and travel the strait and narrow way of God reveals how much we love and desire God.

CHECK LIST FOR STUDYING

- ☐ Did we sincerely pray for God's guidance?
- ☐ Are we studying with a right heart, for the right reasons?
- ☐ Are we searching for truth, honestly contemplating both sides of the belief?
- ☐ Have we already determined the outcome: prejudged?
- ☐ Are we steering our understanding of the Scriptures toward our preferred beliefs?
- ☐ Are we staying inside the Bible, avoiding non-Biblical input?
- ☐ Are we making our paper visuals, on five sheets of paper?

First Sheet: Listing every Bible verse for the belief that gives solid Biblical facts?

Second Sheet: Listing Bible verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from two or more agreeing Bible verses?

Third Sheet: Listing Bible verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from one Bible verse.

Forth Sheet: Listing all Bible verses that can appear to be in opposition or give problems to the belief.

Fifth Sheet: Listing every belief, thought, or idea, that is void of Biblical support.

- ☐ Are we separating Bible truth from human reasoning?
- ☐ Are we finding as many Bible verses as we can about the belief, using our exhaustive concordance to see if the belief is consistent with the whole Bible?
- ☐ How do the verses apply to us?
- ☐ Did we get our New/Old Testament Word Study Dictionaries and study the words in the verses?

"Study" 2 Timothy 2:15

"15 Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth."

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

Loving God is the Nucleus.
Everything good revolves around loving God.

God created humanity with a freewill. We are to choose/prefer to wholeheartedly love God, his attributes, his ways, etc., with all of our heart, soul, mind and strength. This deep love for God will cause us to repent and run away from sinning, iniquity, wickedness, immorality, abominations, unrighteousness, immoral sex, etc. When we genuinely love God with our complete being, God will take care of us, and cause us to do the things we need to do.

Everything that is genuinely good revolves around, and comes from, God. In the end *(eternity)*, we will not possess what is good, IF we DO NOT genuinely love God.

God chooses who gets into Heaven, and God chooses the people who love him. Genuinely loving God with our all is what connects us to God. We cannot be connected to God, or even truly perceive God, without genuinely loving him.

"things which God hath prepared for them that love him" 1 Corinthians 2:9

"9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him."

People who genuinely love God are drawn to God, and God is drawn to them.

Loving God with our complete being is the most important thing we can do. It is starting on our path to Heaven. This is one reason why this is the very first and most important commandment to obey. We are to recognize God is <u>one</u> Lord, and to genuinely love God with our complete being. Doing this starts us on our way of truly understanding and recognizing God.

“Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord”

“thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment” (Most Important)

Mark 12:29–30

“29 And Jesus answered him, The first of all the commandments *is*, Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord:
30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment.”

Obeying this commandment *(recognizing that God is one Lord, and genuinely loving God with our everything)* starts us traveling up the path towards God and Heaven. As we are traveling up the path towards God, God causes us to see and discern the truth *(reality)*. We will see our essential need for Jesus Christ, and we will give ourselves completely to Jesus Christ *(Acts 2:38)*, and follow him to Heaven.

Genuinely loving God is our very first step in exiting sin, we will not be able to start growing out of our sinning without genuinely loving God. Genuinely loving God will cause us to obey Jesus Christ, and walk up the way of God.



Like a magnet, people who genuinely love God will be attracted to God, accept his grace, and attach themselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way. Like a magnet, people, who do not love God, will repel away from God.

Do we truly desire to love God with our everything.

Our genuine love for God will propel us to always wholeheartedly STRIVE, with our whole being, to obey and please God, because genuine love always produces the actions of genuine love. We will recognize him as God, respecting, honoring, and obeying him as Almighty God.

Our extreme efforts to always obey and please him, reveals how much we love and desire him.

Pay attention to words, as we read Bible verses.

(Words can change their meaning over the years.)

Below, the meaning of the word "terrible" needs to be understood. The word "awesome" has replaced it in many newer translations of the Bible.)

"mercy for them that love him and observe his commandments" Nehemiah 1:5

"5 ¶ And said, I beseech thee, O LORD God of heaven, the great and terrible God, that keepeth covenant and mercy for them that love him and observe his commandments:"

"The LORD preserveth all them that love him" Psalms 145:20

"20 The LORD preserveth all them that love him: but all the wicked will he destroy."

"mercy to them that love him" Daniel 9:4

"4 ¶ And I prayed unto the LORD my God, and made my confession, and said, O Lord, the great and dreadful God, keeping the covenant and mercy to them that love him, and to them that keep his commandments;"

"the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him" James 1:12

"12 Blessed *is* the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him."

"mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments"

"he will not be slack to him that hateth him, he will repay him to his face" Deuteronomy 7:9–10

"9 Know therefore that the LORD thy God, he *is* God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations;
10 And repayeth them that hate him to their face, to destroy them: he will not be slack to him that hateth him, he will repay him to his face."

"the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him" James 2:5

"5 Hearken, my beloved brethren, Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him?"

Some people might start thinking that all they have to do is love God, and sit down and do nothing else; this is incorrect. Love always causes the actions of love. If we decline to do the actions of loving God, we do not properly love God yet.

Striving to obey God, and Genuinely loving God, are welded together; they cannot be separated.

Properly loving God always produces obedience. If we genuinely love God, our love for God will drive us to seek and do God's will, and cause us to detest every way and everything that opposes God.

There is no such thing as genuinely loving God while we continue choosing to disobey God. There is no such thing as genuinely being obedient to God, while we do not genuinely love God. Genuinely loving God, and striving to obey him, are an inseparable pair. The Bible connects love and obeying God:

"If ye love me, keep my commandments" John 14:15

"15 ¶ If ye love me, keep my commandments."

"For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments" 1 John 5:2–3

"2 By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God, and keep his commandments.
3 For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous."

"this is love, that we walk after his commandments" 2 John 1:6

"6 And this is love, that we walk after his commandments. This is the commandment, That, as ye have heard from the beginning, ye should walk in it."

“If ye keep my commandments,
ye shall abide in my love” John 15:10

“10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father’s commandments, and abide in his love.”

“He that loveth me not
keepeth not my sayings” John 14:24

“24 He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father’s which sent me.”

“Not every one that saith”
“but he that doeth” Matthew 7:21

“21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.”

“he became the author of eternal salvation
unto all them that obey him” Hebrews 5:9

“9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;”

The people that love God,
and the people that strive to obey him,
are one and the same.

“Israel, what doth the LORD thy God
require of thee, but to” Deuteronomy 10:12

“12 ¶ And now, Israel, what doth the LORD thy God require of thee, but to fear the LORD thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the LORD thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,”

God created people for his pleasure, to love them as his own children, to lovingly oversee, care for, and greatly provide for them. God wants us to be like a little child, who crawls up on his daddy’s lap, hugs his daddy saying, “Daddy, I love you.” “You are the greatest.” Thank you for everything you do for me:” *(this needs to come from the depth of our heart)*. People who genuinely love God desire to be pure, holy, clean, full of love, and righteous, just like their Daddy *(God)*.

As a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, God wants to gather the people who love him *(his children)* under his loving arms of protection *(A lot of people do not understand God's protection, because they do not perceive the whole eternal picture.)*

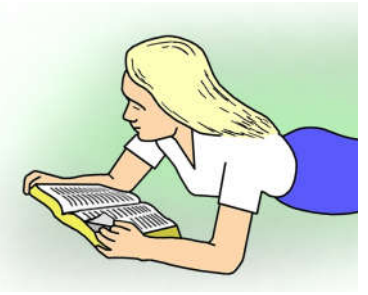
Understanding God does not come from intellectual study alone *(going through Bible College, etc.)*. Much of the needed understanding about God comes from God as a gift to the people who genuinely love God. Thus we might find a simple minded person who understands God better than the preacher, because he loves God more than the preacher loves God. Genuinely loving God with our all, having God first in our heart and life, will cause us to continually, earnestly, read the Bible and prayerfully strive to find and do the will of God, striving to always obey and please God, striving to follow the leading of the Holy Ghost /Spirit, and praising God from the bottom of our heart daily, this is our best route for correctly understanding God and the Bible.

God gives to the people who genuinely love God

If we wholeheartedly love God, God will give us the ability to see/perceive and interact with him – If we will *(now or in the future)* genuinely love God, God will draw us to himself, and start revealing many things about himself to us. How do we find God?

"ye shall seek me, and find *me*, when ye shall search for me with all your heart" Jeremiah 29:13

"13 And ye shall seek me, and find *me*, when ye shall search for me with all your heart."



To understand God, we need to follow God and the teachings of the Bible, not the opinions of human beings. However, God uses different things, ways, and people, to guide us by his Spirit. God will speak to our heart directly; he will speak to us as we read the Holy Bible; and God will send chosen people to teach us God's ways.

Prayerfully reading and studying the Bible daily, allowing God to speak to us through the Bible, will help us identify a person who has a strong connection with God. If we need help and advice, we need to go to someone who genuinely has a strong connection with God. *(Just because someone went to Bible college, and became a preacher, does not guarantee that he has a strong connection to God.)*

If we genuinely love God, God will lead us to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ. When we are genuinely joined to Jesus Christ the Bible way, God's Spirit will come and dwell inside of us 24/7, giving us constant help and guidance, leading us into the truth and into Godly righteousness, as we cooperate with him.

"when he, the Spirit of truth, is come,
he will guide you into all truth" John 16:13

"13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come."

The Holy Ghost/Spirit causes people, who genuinely love God, to recognize God's Spiritual voice *(God Spiritually speaks to our heart)*. We will follow God's Spiritual voice until we find him. After we have genuinely found God, and God fills us with his Spirit, nobody will be able to convince us that God does not exist, because we have already interacted with God, and God is living inside of us. As long as we continue to genuinely love God and strive to find and do his will, God will lead us to do what we need to do.

If we wholeheartedly love God, God will come to us giving us more Godly understanding, discernment, knowledge, etc. More fully understanding God is a gift from God, to the people who genuinely wholeheartedly love him. He will reveal more of himself to us, enlighten our hearts, giving us insight, awareness, perception, and understanding about God. We will recognize that the things God is instructing us to do are good for us, and will profit us and others.

The Spirit of God who is dwelling inside of us will teach us to understand, discern, and recognize which things are truly of God. As we prayerfully read and study the Bible daily, the Spirit of God will cause us to find and do the things we need to do, and teach us how we are to live, etc., as we cooperate with God. God's Spirit will show us which way we are to go in our Spiritual walk with God. Our love for God will cause us to strive to obey and please God at all times. All these things are a direct gift from God, to the people who genuinely love him with their all.

If we do not love God, we will not have the Spirit of God guiding us, thus we will not be able to understand and perceive God.

If we wholeheartedly love God, God will cause us to grow out of our sinning and into Godly righteousness as we cooperate with him. God transforming us into Godly righteousness sometimes involves going through trials, situations, and problems.

Example: God allows you to lose your job. Your house and car get repossessed. You, your wife, and children are hungry, and you do not know what to do. Then you finally get another job, house, car, etc.

This financial hardship molded you into being a more compassionate person. Now, when you see people who are down and out, you deeply feel for them, because you remember how it felt when you were down and out. This causes you to be quicker to help them, and to earnestly pray for them. God molded you into being more compassionate, molding you into being a better Christian.

God causes us to remember how bad we were before we put on Jesus Christ; and that God freely forgave us. This should cause us to freely forgive people who do wrong to us, by remembering how desperately we needed to be forgiven, and that God freely forgave us.

“Shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellowservant, even as I had pity on thee?” Matthew 18:23–35

“23 Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, which would take account of his servants.
24 And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents.
25 But forasmuch as he had not to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and children, and all that he had, and payment to be made.
26 The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.
27 Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt.
28 But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellowservants, which owed him an hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took *him* by the throat, saying, Pay me that thou owest.
29 And his fellowservant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.
30 And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt.
31 So when his fellowservants saw what was done, they were very sorry, and came and told unto their lord all that was done.
32 Then his lord, after that he had called him, said unto him, O thou wicked servant, I forgave thee all that debt, because thou desiredst me:
33 Shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellowservant, even as I had pity on thee?
34 And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him.
35 So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses.”

If we genuinely wholeheartedly love God, God will listen to our prayers. God’s knowledge and foresight are perfect; God always does what is good. God loves us, thus he will not always grant our requests; he will only grant what is good, and what will end up being good. Just because we believe something is good, and the right way, does not make it true. Mankind’s foresight is very short and lacking, we only think we know what is good, but God knows all the future. Basically, mankind only sees the here and now, but God sees things in the eternal picture.

If our prayers are not answered the way we think they should be answered, maybe we are praying for the wrong things, or maybe we are not connected to God the way we need to be connected. Are we walking uprightly in God's eyes?

"no good *thing* will he withhold from them that walk uprightly" Psalms 84:11

"11 For the LORD God *is* a sun and shield: the LORD will give grace and glory: no good *thing* will he withhold from them that walk uprightly."

Some people think they did too much sinning; they think they are too filthy to give themselves to God. They cannot imagine God forgiving them, because they did so many evil things. In reality, if they sincerely love and want God, the door of salvation is open to them. People who are forgiven much *(big-time)* often love God much *(big-time)*. Sometimes the evilest sinners, who are genuinely converted, become the best Christians.

"to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little" Luke 7:47

"47 Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little."

Our life on Earth is a period of time, which reveals our true heart *(if we desire God or evil/sin)*. On Earth we have many problems. What we do, and how we handle our problems, reveals if we love God, and how much we love God.

If we truly love God, our heart will crave to love, follow, and obey God in all things. And if we do not truly love God, our heart will desire to follow evil/sin *(evil/sin is doing things that are contrary to the will of God)*. Whoever we choose to love and obey, Christ or sin, reveals where we are going to live forever.

During our lifetime we are given the opportunity to switch sides. We may genuinely repent *(genuinely turn from our sinning with all our heart)*, and give our self totally to Jesus Christ, striving to follow and obey Jesus Christ in righteousness, all the way up into Heaven.

Let us gain a much closer relationship with God

God is seeking for people who genuinely worship him in spirit and in truth.



"shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth"

"23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him."

If we get down on our knees, lift our hands up towards God, and praise God in spirit and in truth; my experience tells me that God will come to us. God only accepts the words we speak from the depth of our heart.

"Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you"

James 4:8

"8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse *your* hands, *ye* sinners; and purify *your* hearts, *ye* double minded."

When we get God's attention, we need to ask God to help us give our selves completely to him, and tell God that we desire to love him more and more every day. We need to prayerfully read from the New Testament daily, being led by the Holy Spirit/Ghost *(we also need the Old Testament)*. We should always praise God before and after we pray and read the Bible.



People, who do not love God, block themselves from seeing and accepting the reality that the Holy Bible *(when it is properly understood)* is our God given handbook on how to live, love, obey, and please God. Lack of proper love for God produces people who choose /prefer to defy God's instructions.

Just as there were many loud voices in the crowd, there are also many voices telling us how to become a part of the family of God, but all these voices do not agree. However, in time, if we earnestly pray and earnestly read the Bible daily, loving God with all our heart, soul, mind, and strength, the Holy Ghost/Spirit will let us know which voices are actually from God. We need to love God and trust him to direct our way, as we strive to find and do his will. If we truly love God, we are not on our own. Our love for God will cause us to keep searching the Bible to understand more and more about God's will, for the rest of our lives; it never ends.

We do not obey God's commandments to earn our way into Heaven. We are not saved by our works, but by the grace of God. However, when we genuinely give our self totally to Jesus Christ, we will have a deep genuine love for God. This deep love will compel us to obey God, including doing all the "works" to the best of our ability.

Even when we wholeheartedly strive not to sin, being human, we will still end up short of perfection and mess-up many times. If our heart is right, if we repent and strive not to do it again, and if we genuinely love God, God will forgive us.

When we pray, let us include God in our prayers.

We should say and mean things like: "Lord, take time and have a good day." Why? We need to tell God that our mind is dwelling on him. God is to be: our friend, our first love, the one who supplies all our needs, our Father, our Lord, the one who made us, the head of our Godly family, the one who oversees us, etc. Yet, he is largely forgotten by many until we need something. Are we like children who forget about our parents, until we need money or something? We ask for things, but how much do we give. God needs to be our most important; we need to be focused more on God than anyone or anything else. God made us, he died for us, and he is constantly doing unending things for us, yet many people tend to forget about God until we need or want something from him. We could say that many people use God more than they love him.

How would we feel if our children used us instead of loving us. We worked and provided for our children all our life, and now they do not know we exist, until they want or need something. Then, after we give it to them, they forget that we exist until the next time they want or need something. Would we feel loved by them.

God wants a loving relationship between us and God, and we need to do things for God solely because we love him. We need to focus on God first throughout every day, loving God with all our heart, mind, soul, and strength. We need to always strive to obey God, because we love him.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

7

Putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ

Acts 2:38 is the first and foremost instructions
for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ.

These instructions were given **to the first converts** of the Church, **on the first day** of the Church.

All the Apostles were with St. Peter *(Acts 2:14)* as he preached and gave these instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ. They remain our joining instructions.

We need to believe that Jesus Christ is God's Son, and we need to accept him as our Lord *(as the one we obey)*. Genuine belief on the Lord Jesus Christ always results with us putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ.

THE JOINING INSTRUCTIONS

Repentance is a firm and true decision to turn our life's direction from following the path of sin to striving to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. It is deciding to put all of our trust in Jesus Christ for salvation and everything. It is deciding to make him our personal Lord *(the one we obey)*.

Water Baptism is being immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of our sins. It is performed after we have believed and genuinely repented. It is our ceremony *(outward action)* for putting on *(giving ourselves to)* Jesus Christ, *(further than infant sprinkling)*, and when we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we are joined to Jesus Christ.

Spiritual Baptism is God entering us, saturating us with his Spirit, to live constantly inside us: to direct us; to lead us; to guide us; to teach us; to comfort us; to endue us with Godly power; to give us strength and boldness; to mold us into a righteous, moral, loving person, as we cooperate with God. The true children of God follow/obey the Spirit of God; we desire to obey him. Receiving the Holy Ghost /Spirit *(God)* is our personal burning bush encounter with God. The Holy Ghost/Spirit, dwelling inside of us, starts molding us into a Godly person.



During the forty days after Jesus Christ arose from the dead, Christ gave his Disciples further instructions. Before he ascended into heaven, he instructed his disciples /followers to wait in Jerusalem until they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Seven weeks after Christ arose from the dead, they were in Jerusalem on the day of Pentecost *(the Feast of Weeks)*. This is the day the Church of Jesus Christ was launched/activated; thus it is the first day of the Church. It was launched/activated when God filled the followers of Jesus Christ with the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Now with the Holy Ghost/Spirit constantly dwelling inside them, they had the needed power/authority and guidance to continue the work of Jesus Christ, and the soul saving business of the Church was put in full motion. God, as the Holy Ghost/Spirit, constantly lives inside the followers of Jesus Christ: he teaches, directs, leads, guides, and comforts them; he gives them strength and boldness.

On the first day of the Church, after hearing St. Peter preach, bystanders anxiously desired to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ. They asked St. Peter and the rest of the Apostles what they should do. These instructions remain our joining instructions, for putting on Jesus Christ.

"what shall we do?" Acts 2:37–39

"37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

Note the words, **"the promise"**, in verse 39 *(above)*.

The Holy Ghost (the Spirit of God, the Holy Spirit is sometimes called **"the promise"**).

"wait for the promise" Acts 1:4–5

"4 And, being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, *saith he*, ye have heard of me.
5 For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence."

(Below) Received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, and spoke in tongues

"having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost" Acts 2:33

"33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear."

Did we put on *(join)* **Jesus Christ the Bible way?**

Check if completed

- ☐ **Do I truly believe** on the Lord Jesus Christ?
- ☐ **Did I repent?** Turn to continuously obey Christ?
- ☐ **Was I baptized in** the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of my sins, by immersion, after I believed and repented?
- ☐ **Did I receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit?** Is God dwelling inside me? Am I truly being led by the Holy Ghost /Spirit?

The first step in playing ball is to join the team.

The first steps, in following Jesus Christ, are to believe on him, and obey Acts 2:38

Some scholars believe baptism was around before John the Baptist, and it was common knowledge that baptism is a ceremony of converting/joining.

The procedure for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ is symbolic of his death, burial, and resurrection.

Repentance is symbolic of death.

Repentance is our personal decision to turn off our sinful path to follow Christ in righteousness. After repenting, the person who cursed, got drunk, enjoyed immoral sex, etc., no longer exists. In a sense, he/she is dead.

Baptism is symbolic of **burial**.

If we trace the word baptize back to its Greek origin, we will find it was an everyday word meaning immersion /dip. The Bible also indicates baptism by immersion. Baptism is a moment of being **buried** in water.

Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit is symbolic of **resurrection**.

When we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we have been resurrected to a new life in Jesus Christ. We are a new person; we think, feel, and act differently. We are now growing into morality, good works, etc., because we are being led by the Spirit of God. Our old sinful self died, and we have been **resurrected** into a new person of righteousness, by the grace of God.

"we are buried with him by baptism into death:
that like as Christ was raised up from the dead
by the glory of the Father,
even so we also should walk in newness of life" Romans 6:3–5

"3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness* of *his* resurrection:"



There are three parts of joining our self to Jesus Christ.

The first part is completed with our heart and mind: We are to believe the gospel and wholeheartedly repent.

Repentance is a firm and true decision to turn our life's direction from following the path of sin to striving to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. It is deciding to put all of our trust in Jesus Christ for salvation and everything. It is deciding to make him our personal Lord *(the one we obey)*.

The second part is **water baptism,** being immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of our sins. It is our ceremony *(outward action)* for putting on *(joining, giving ourselves to)* Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins.

The third part is **receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit.** This is God's part. This is God himself entering us, to remain constantly dwelling inside of us, to help and guide us. Our part in this is to have**:** a heart that is totally given to God 100%, above everyone and everything; a heart that totally loves God, above everyone and everything; a heart that greatly desires to always do God's will in all things; etc.

Sometimes, at some places in the Bible, the Bible might only mention one of the above things. This in no way diminishes the importance, or the necessity, of the other two.

When we join, becoming a part of someone or something, many times it is completed by an action. A man and a woman are joined together by the wedding vows. A man joins the Army by being sworn-in. Some things may be accomplished by signing our name. Etc.

I believe, being baptized into Jesus Christ is the ceremony *(the procedure, the action)* for joining *(putting on, entering, becoming a part of, converting to)* Jesus Christ, for the remission of our sins. I believe, our sins are forgiven when we join Jesus Christ, by being baptized into Jesus Christ.



Being baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ", we go under the water; then we come up out of the water, with our sins forgiven. Thus, baptism is talked about as "washing away our sins".



People tend to associate the word, "washing," with the word, "water," causing confusion. The water does not wash our sins away; rather, in baptism, Jesus washes our sins away *(forgives our sins)*. Our sins are forgiven because we joined Jesus Christ, when we were baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ", and received the Holy Ghost/Spirit. The power to forgive sins is in Jesus Christ, not in the water. Being baptized is obeying Jesus Christ's command for us to be baptized.

I believe verse 16 *(below)* is saying: **He that believes the gospel, and puts on Jesus Christ will be saved** (*We put on Jesus Christ by being baptized into Jesus Christ.*) Acts 16:15–16

"15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.
16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned."

The Biblical pattern is: People believed, and then they were baptized into *(joined) Jesus* Christ.

In the Great Commission, Jesus Christ instructs that the people who believe on Jesus Christ are to be baptized. Because he is instructing people to do it, we know he is talking about water baptism, and not Spiritual Baptism. Water baptism in the name of Jesus Christ shows our decision to be joined to Jesus Christ. Read on and see the repeated process of believing on Jesus Christ, and then being baptized INTO Jesus Christ.

On the day of Pentecost, people believed St. Peter's preaching. Some of them asked St. Peter and the Apostles what they needed to do *(to join and be a part of the way of Jesus Christ),* and that day, 3000 people were baptized into *(put on)* Jesus Christ.

“Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ” Acts 2:38

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

↕ Jumping down to verse 41 Acts 2:41

“41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand souls.”

People in Samaria were baptized into *(put on, joined)* Jesus Christ, by being baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

“they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women” Acts 8:12–13

“12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.

13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done.”

↕ Jumping down to verse 16

“ they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus” Acts 8:16

“16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”

The eunuch wanted to know what hindered him from being baptized into *(joining, putting on)* Jesus Christ

what doth hinder me to be baptized?”

“If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest” Acts 8:35–37

“35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

36 And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized?

37 And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.”

Saul was baptized into Jesus Christ Acts 9:17–18

"17 And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.
18 And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized."

They knew the Gentiles received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, because they heard them speak in tongues. **St. Peter knew these Gentiles needed to be baptized into** *(needed to put on)* **Jesus Christ**. So they were baptized in the name of the Lord *(Lord Jesus Christ)*.

"on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost"

"For they heard them speak with tongues"

"Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost" Acts 10:45–48

"45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.
46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,
47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?
48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days."

Lydia, and her household, were baptized into *(put on)* **Jesus Christ.** Acts 16:14–15

"14 And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira, which worshipped God, heard *us*: whose heart the Lord opened, that she attended unto the things which were spoken of Paul.
15 And when she was baptized, and her household, she besought *us*, saying, If ye have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come into my house, and abide *there*. And she constrained us."

(1) A midnight earthquake

(2) The jailor asked what he needed to do to be saved

(3) He was told to believe on the Lord Jesus Christ

(4) They explained to him/them the way of the Lord

(5) The jailor and his household <u>were baptized</u> into *(put on, joined)* **Jesus Christ "straightway"** *(Immediately)***, while it was still night.**

Acts 16:25–33

"25 ¶ And at midnight Paul and Silas prayed, and sang praises unto God: and the prisoners heard them.
26 And suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken: and immediately all the doors were opened, and every one's bands were loosed.
27 And the keeper of the prison awaking out of his sleep, and seeing the prison doors open, he drew out his sword, and would have killed himself, supposing that the prisoners had been fled.
28 But Paul cried with a loud voice, saying, Do thyself no harm: for we are all here.
29 Then he called for a light, and sprang in, and came trembling, and fell down before Paul and Silas,
30 And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved?
31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.
32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway."

I believe baptism took place **"straightway"** because of the great importance of water baptism *(the great importance of being joined to Jesus Christ)*.



“many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized” *(believed, and joined Jesus Christ)* Acts 18:8

“8 And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized.”

“When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus” Acts 19:1–7

“1 ¶ And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples,

2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.

3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John’s baptism.

4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.

7 And all the men were about twelve..”

“why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized” Acts 22:16

“16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord.”

“baptized into Christ have put on Christ”

(Note the words, “into” and “put on”) Galatians 3:27

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”



"The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us" 1 Peter 3:21

"21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:"

"(not the putting away of the filth of the flesh"

Not the washing of dirt from our body

Belief comes before being baptized into Christ

Mark 16:15–16

"15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

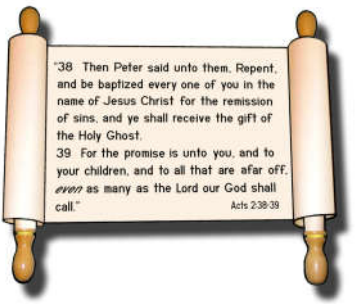
16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned."

Water baptism is not about water. Water baptism is the ceremony part *(the procedure)* of putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins *(actually, in baptism, we are joining Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins)*. The process of putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ is symbolic of Christ's death, burial, resurrection; baptism is a moment of being buried in water. Water baptism is not about water; there is no power in the water. However, water is used in the ceremony. *(For more understanding, read chapter II.)*

Galatians 3:27

"27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ."

May God bless you with truth, as you do your prayerful research.



I

Hear / Believe / Repent

Many churches believe we need to hear the Gospel of Jesus Christ, believe on Jesus Christ *(accepting him as our Lord)*, and repent. The problem is some people do not fully understand the Biblical meanings of these terms. All of these actions are linked together. We cannot genuinely do any one of these things, without doing the other two.

Hear means to take in the words and do accordingly: like Dad said "Listen to your Mother".

Believe includes the following: believing the gospel of Jesus Christ; believing Jesus Christ is truly the Son of God; believing on his name; trusting him for salvation; accepting him as our **Lord** *(as the one we obey)*.

Repent means more than telling God we are sorry, and asking him to forgive us. Repent means to change one's mind and go in a different direction. In Biblical context, repentance is the firm decision to exit sinning, to love, follow, and obey Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

Some people tell God they are sorry for the sins they committed, attempting to escape the eternal lake of fire. The problem is, some people have no desire to stop all their sinning. They hope to escape the eternal lake of fire by saying the right words.

God knows if we are genuine with him. If we did not turn from our sinning to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, we did not repent. If we have honestly decided, from the bottom of our heart, to exit our sinful ways to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness, we have repented. If we repented, we will be desiring and striving to obey Jesus Christ in all things. We will learn and grow upward as we travel the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

A good parallel of repentance is Jesus Christ calling his Disciples. He said "Follow me", and they stopped what they were doing and followed him.

Likewise: Jesus Christ is calling us to leave what we are doing *(sinning)* and follow him. Our life and actions will reveal if our repentance is genuine.

"they straightway left *their* nets, and followed him" Matthew 4:19–20

"19 And he saith unto them, Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.
20 And they straightway left *their* nets, and followed him."

"he arose, and followed him" Matthew 9:9

"9 ¶ And as Jesus passed forth from thence, he saw a man, named Matthew, sitting at the receipt of custom: and he saith unto him, Follow me. And he arose, and followed him."

Christ is telling us "Follow me".
We are to stop sinning
and follow Jesus Christ,
striving to obey him to the best of our ability.

Research the word "repent" in a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.

"And such were some of you" 1 Corinthians 6:9–11

"9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,
10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.
11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God."

The words **"such were some of you"** *(above)* tells us some pre-Christians did some of these things before they gave themselves to Jesus Christ. However, when they Biblically gave themselves to Jesus Christ, they were washed, sanctified, and justified, in the name of Jesus Christ and by the Holy Ghost/Spirit; thus they ceased doing these things.

“not willing that any should perish,
but that all should come to repentance” 2 Peter 3:9

“9 ¶ The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.”

Obedience to God is repentance in action. Jesus Christ is the door of God's grace. We enter by believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes obeying Acts 2:38, and accepting Christ as our Lord *(as the one we obey).*

Which camp do we want to live inside?

Inside the good camp of God lives**:** access to God, blessings of God, caring, clean conversations, faithfulness, forgiveness, gentleness, giving, good works, guidance by God, healthy thinking, helping, holiness, honesty, hope, hospitality, love, humbleness of mind, joy, kindness, liberty, long-suffering, purity, mercy, sharing, righteousness, peace, meekness, obedience to God, patience, understanding, rejoicing, thankfulness, self-control, temperance, truthfulness, etc.

Inside the evil camp of sin lives**:** abortion, adultery, backbiting, belittling, lying, bitterness, child molesting, covetousness, cursing, disobedience, drunkenness, evil music, fornication, getting even, gossip, hating people, homosexuality, idolatry, immorality, iniquity, lasciviousness, lust, pride, rapes, murders, non-spouse sex, pornography, prostitution, ridiculing, stealing, vulgarity, reviling, rioting, seductive dressing, selfishness, witchcraft, etc.

Our authentic inward action of repentance will always result with us doing proper outward actions. Hearing, believing, repentance, striving to always obey God etc., are all linked together. It is a case of doing all or nothing.



Hear

The word "HEAR" includes the action of doing it:
like Dad said "Listen to your Mother".

Luke 9:35

"35 And there came a voice out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son: hear him."

John 5:24

"24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life."

John 18:37

"37 Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice."

Acts 3:22–23

"22 For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.
23 And it shall come to pass, *that* every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people."

Acts 15:7

"7 And when there had been much disputing, Peter rose up, and said unto them, Men *and* brethren, ye know how that a good while ago God made choice among us, that the Gentiles by my mouth should hear the word of the gospel, and believe."

Romans 10:17

"17 So then faith *cometh* by hearing, and hearing by the word of God."



Belief

If we are sick and believe in *(have faith in)* our Doctor, we will follow his instructions. Likewise, if we believe in *(have faith in)* Jesus Christ, we will follow his instructions. Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ includes obeying him.

John 6:29

"29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent."

John 6:40

"40 And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day."

John 6:47

"47 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me hath everlasting life."

Mark 16:15–16

"15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.
16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned."

John 1:12

"12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name:"

John 3:14–18

"14 And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:
15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.
16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.
17 For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.
18 He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God."

John 3:36

"36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him."

John 11:25–26

“25 Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:
26 And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?”

Acts 13:38–39

“38 Be it known unto you therefore, men *and* brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:
39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.”

Acts 16:30–34

“30 And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved?
31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.
32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.
34 And when he had brought them into his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in God with all his house.”

Acts 10:43

“43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.”

John 12:46

“46 I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on me should not abide in darkness.”

John 16:27

“27 For the Father himself loveth you, because ye have loved me, and have believed that I came out from God.”

John 8:24

“24 I said therefore unto you, that ye shall die in your sins: for if ye believe not that I am *he*, ye shall die in your sins.”

Romans 10:9–10

“9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.
10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.”

Repentance

Repentance is a true/firm decision, from the uttermost depth of our heart, to turn from our sinful ways to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. The way we live reveals if our repentance is genuine.

Matthew 4:17

"17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand."

Luke 13:3

"3 I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish."

Acts 17:30

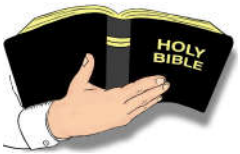
"30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent:"

Luke 5:32

"32 I came not to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."

Mark 6:12

"12 And they went out, and preached that men should repent."



Acts 26:20

"20 But shewed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and *then* to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance."

2 Peter 3:9

"9 ¶ The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance."

Luke 24:47

"47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem."

Matthew 11:20

"20 Then began he to upbraid the cities wherein most of his mighty works were done, because they repented not:"

Mark 1:15

"15 And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel."

Obedience

Repentance is turning from sin to obey God. If we have truly repented, we will be striving to obey Jesus Christ.

Matthew 7:21

"21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven."

James 1:22

"22 But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves."

1 John 2:17

"17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever."

1 John 2:3–4

"3 ¶ And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.
4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him."

John 8:31

"31 ¶ Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on him, If ye continue in my word, *then* are ye my disciples indeed;"

Luke 11:28

"28 But he said, Yea rather, blessed *are* they that hear the word of God, and keep it."

John 14:21

"21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him."

Matthew 12:50

"50 For whosoever shall do the will of my Father which is in heaven, the same is my brother, and sister, and mother."

Luke 8:15

"15 But that on the good ground are they, which in an honest and good heart, having heard the word, keep *it*, and bring forth fruit with patience."

Luke 14:27

"27 And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple."

John 15:10

"10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father's commandments, and abide in his love."

Disobedience

Repentance is turning from sin to obey God. Ignoring to obey God's instructions reveals an unrepented heart.

1 Corinthians 6:9–11

"9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,
10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.
11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God."

Matthew 13:41–42

"41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;
42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth."

Galatians 5:19–21

"19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness,
20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,
21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God."

`

Romans 1:18

"18 For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness;"

Ephesians 5:5–7

"5 For this ye know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.
6 Let no man deceive you with vain words: for because of these things cometh the wrath of God upon the children of disobedience.
7 Be not ye therefore partakers with them."

Titus 1:16

"16 They profess that they know God; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate."

1 John 3:10

"10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother."

3 John 1:11

"11 Beloved, follow not that which is evil, but that which is good. He that doeth good is of God: but he that doeth evil hath not seen God."

Luke 6:46

"46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?"

Matthew 7:23

"23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity."

Matthew 7:26

"26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand:"

All genuine believers follow/obey Christ.

Christ's followers are sometimes called Christ's sheep.

"and the sheep follow him"

John 10:3–4

"3 To him the porter openeth; and the sheep hear his voice: and he calleth his own sheep by name, and leadeth them out.
4 And when he putteth forth his own sheep, he goeth before them, and the sheep follow him: for they know his voice."

"and they follow me"

John 10:26–28

"26 But ye believe not, because ye are not of my sheep, as I said unto you.
27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:
28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any *man* pluck them out of my hand."

II
Water Baptism

Baptism IS NOT "works" *(trying to earn our way into Heaven)*.

Baptism is our ceremony for putting on, entering, joining, giving ourselves to, Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins.

We can say,

We are baptized into *(put on)* Christ, for it is in the Bible.

"27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ." Galatians 3:27

Water Baptism is further than infant sprinkling. *(Read Chapter F)*

This chapter gives statements about water baptism.
We will find deeper explanations
in the forthcoming subdivided chapters.



Individual elements of Christianity, including baptism, do not fly solo. Baptism *(putting on Jesus Christ)* is linked to all the elements of Christianity.

When we say, "We put on *(join)* Christ by being baptized into Christ", we are naming one action, baptism, to represent all the elements of putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ: just as Tom's grandmother used a single word, "Turkey", to represent the complete Thanksgiving meal.

When we put on *(join)* Jesus Christ by being baptized into Christ, and receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we become a disciple of Jesus Christ.

Let us follow a brief Biblical path on water baptism

- John the Baptist came to the scene baptizing people with the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.
- Jesus was baptized by John the Baptist.
- We read in the Bible about Jesus baptizing. However, it was his Disciples who actually did the baptizing/immersing.

Before Christ ascended up into heaven, he instructed his Disciples to go and do the following:

- Preach the gospel to the whole world;
- Baptize the people who believe on Jesus Christ;
- Teach them to obey Christ's commandments.

A few days later, on the first day of the Church, we find St. Peter instructing new believers on how to get right with God. He told them to repent, to be baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ", and receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. On the same day they baptized about three thousand new converts into Christ. *(Acts 2:37–41)*

We find St. Paul re-baptizing people who were already baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism. Why? Although these people were baptized, they were not baptized into Jesus Christ, so Paul re-baptized them "in the name of the Lord Jesus". *(Acts 19:1–7) (See chapter H [in this book] for a better explanation of why they baptized people in the name of the "Lord Jesus.")*

Baptism is further than infant sprinkling.

People in the Bible were baptized immediately after believing. The command is to**:**
<u>believe</u>**,** <u>repen</u>t, and <u>be baptized</u>.

We cannot find in the Bible,
in recorded accounts, or in teachings,
where a baptism took place before belief.

Jesus Christ made and baptized more disciples than John the Baptist. More people were becoming followers of Jesus Christ than followers of John. John was fading; Jesus Christ was advancing. This was God's plan.

"Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John" John 4:1–2

"1 ¶ When therefore the Lord knew how the Pharisees had heard that Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John,
2 (Though Jesus himself baptized not, but his disciples,)"

When we are baptized into Christ, we are **putting on** Christ. The Bible compares the *putting on, in* baptism, to the putting on of a garment. *(See Strong's #1746 in your New Testament Word Study Dictionary. It will confirm that the words putting on Christ is being paralleled to putting on clothing.)*

"have put on Christ" Galatians 3:27

"27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ."

When we see baptism as an action of putting on, joining, entering, Jesus Christ, we start to comprehend things better.

"Baptism saves us" can be understood as "Putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ saves us", because water baptism is our ceremony for putting on/joining/entering Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins.
(Baptism is one part of joining Christ.)

"*even* baptism doth also now save us" 1 Peter 3:21

"21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:"

"Believe and be baptized" can be understood as "Believing and putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ saves us", because water baptism is our ceremony for putting on/joining/entering Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins.
(Baptism is one part of joining Christ: the ceremony part.)

"He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved" Mark 16:16

"16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned."

When St. Peter saw the Gentiles receive the Holy Ghost /Spirit, he understood they needed to be baptized into Jesus Christ *(to put on Jesus Christ)*.

"he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord" Acts 10:45–48

"45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.
46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,
47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?
48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days."

John the Baptist was baptizing, and some people declined. They rejected the counsel of God; they rejected God's way.



"rejected the counsel of God against themselves" Luke 7:29–30

"29 And all the people that heard *him*, and the publicans, justified God, being baptized with the baptism of John.
30 But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves, being not baptized of him."

Baptism is to be performed immediately after someone believes and repents. The jailor's whole household was baptized immediately after the midnight earthquake; they did not even wait until daylight *(Acts 16:25–33)*. Baptizing the people immediately after they believed and repented seems to be the norm throughout the New Testament.

"the same hour of the night" Acts 16:33

"33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway."

When we contemplate baptism, we need to be aware of the immense power and authority found in the name of "Jesus Christ". The name of "Jesus Christ" has power to remit sins.

We have Matthew 28:19, but when we consider all the verses in the Bible, we do not find the good descriptive names of God, "Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit", being used as the verbal signature for baptism or anything. We find everything being performed in the name of "Jesus Christ": baptisms, healings, and casting out demons. Get your **exhaustive** concordance and check it out for yourself.

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are one and the same God/Deity, not three Gods *(three Deity beings)* in unity. Nobody is being overlooked or left out when we are baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ". Jesus Christ is the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, existing together in the body of Jesus Christ.



Baptism in the name of "Jesus Christ"

"be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ" Acts 2:38

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost."

"they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus" Acts 19:5

"5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus."

“they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus” Acts 8:16

“16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”

The New Testament was translated from Greek. In Greek, the word baptize was an everyday word meaning to dip/immerse. Washing hands, or anything, by immersing them into water is baptizing them.

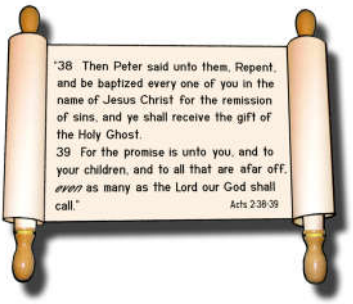
My studies inform me the Greek word for baptism cannot be translated to mean sprinkle or pour. A close examination of people being baptized in the Bible indicates they were immersed. Study the word baptize in your New Testament word Study Dictionary, and in your Bible.

Water baptism is not about water. Water baptism is the ceremony part *(the procedure)* of putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins *(actually, in baptism, we are joining Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins)*. The process of putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ is symbolic of Christ's death, burial, resurrection; baptism is a moment of being buried in water. Water baptism is not about water *(the water has no power)*; however, water is used in the ceremony. Willfully declining, to be baptized into Christ, could be viewed as willfully declining to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ.

“have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ” Galatians 3:27

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.**”**

I do not find any Biblical support for calling Water Baptism, “works”. Thus, I believe calling Water Baptism “works” simply comes from human reasoning, and not the Bible.



In the following subdivided chapters,
we will look closer at the Scriptures,
and go deeper into the details on water baptism.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

A
The Great Commission

After Christ died on the cross for our sins, he arose from the dead. He was seen for forty days before he ascended up into heaven.

Before Christ ascended into heaven, Christ gave his Disciples some go and do instructions. One set of these instructions were: **(1)** go and preach the Gospel to everyone; **(2)** baptize everyone who believes; **(3)** teach the believers to obey Christ's commandments.

This set of Christ's instructions is called the Great Commission. Along with the commission was the promise that Christ's followers would soon receive the Holy Ghost /Spirit.

Preaching the gospel to the whole world
is only one part of the Great Commission.

If the believers are not being baptized into Christ,
the Great Commission is not being fully obeyed.

We can locate records of the Great Commission recorded by St. Matthew, St. Mark, and St. Luke. We need to study all these records.

In the Great Commission, Jesus Christ commands his Church to baptize the believers.

When Jesus Christ gives us a commandment,
and our heart is right,
our love for God will compel us to obey him.

Question: How do we know Christ is talking about water baptism, and not Spiritual baptism, in the Great Commission?



Answer: He is instructing human beings to perform it.

St. Matthew's record of the Great Commission

Note how clearly St. Matthew records the three parts: **(1)** teach/preach the gospel; **(2)** baptize the believers; **(3)** teach the believers to obey Christ's commandments.

"baptizing them" Matthew 28:18–20

"18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.
19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:
20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen."

St. Mark's record of the Great Commission

"and is baptized" Mark 16:15–16

"15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.
16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned."

St. Luke's record of the Great Commission

St. Luke wrote two books of the Bible. One book is called "St. Luke," and the other book is called "The Acts of the Apostles." Bible verses from both books are used to explain St. Luke's record of the Great Commission.

When we read the Great Commission in St. Luke, we do not find the word "baptism". However, St. Luke's record of the Great Commission clearly ties it to what was preached in Jerusalem on the day of Pentecost *(the first day of the Church – Acts 2)*. With this additional information, St. Luke's record of the Great Commission is tied to water baptism.

"repentance and remission of sins
should be preached in his name
among all nations,
beginning at Jerusalem" Luke 24:46–49

"46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:
47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

48 And ye are witnesses of these things.
49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high."

To see how Luke 24:47 connects to the first day of the Church, which ties it to baptism, we need to consider four points of the verse.

1. "repentance and remission of sins should be preached"

2. "in his name" (in the name of "Jesus Christ")

3. "among all nations"

4. "beginning at Jerusalem"

Luke 24:47

"47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem."

Nine days later:

On the first day of the Church, the day of Pentecost, they were **in "Jerusalem"**. They were **"among all nations"**. Jews who lived in many other nations came home for Pentecost *(the Feast of Weeks)*. Now, let us **look and see what was "preached in his name" about "repentance and remission of sins"** ***(it was water baptism [which is the ceremony for putting on (joining) Jesus Christ for the remission of sins])***.

"Repent, and be baptized every one of you
in the name of Jesus Christ
for the remission of sins" Acts 2:38

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost."

Baptizing people is definitely a part of the Great Commission!

If converts are not being baptized into Christ, the Great Commission is not being fully obeyed.

May God bless you with truth, as you do your prayerful research.

B

The first day of the Church

When Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, he handed the work of preaching the Gospel, and everything which goes along with it, over to the followers of Christ. But at this point and time, they did not have what it takes to do the job, because they were human beings.

The Church is all the genuine Holy Ghost/Spirit filled Christians in the world, as one group *(the people)*. Genuine Christians follow the leading of the Spirit of God.

On the day of Pentecost, God *(as the Holy Ghost/Spirit)* entered the genuine followers of Christ, and remained constantly inside them. With God dwelling inside them, directing them, they were ready to do their job. This is the day the Church was launched/activated by God, and began to function through the Holy Ghost/Spirit. It was the first day of the Church.

On the first day of the Church, all the Apostles were with St. Peter as he instructed the first converts of the Church on how to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ. *(Acts 2:38)*

Belonging to a church, being a preacher or priest, holding an office in the church, even if it is the highest office, does not make a person a genuine Christian. Since the day of Pentecost, following the leading of the Spirit of God, who lives 24/7 inside all genuine Christians, identifies the genuine Christian *(identifies who is a genuine Christian)*. The Spirit, who is inside Jesus Christ, is inside all genuine Christians.

"if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his" Romans 8:9

"9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."

"For as many as are led by" Romans 8:14

"14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."

The Holy Ghost/Spirit gives Jesus Christ's followers directions, power, truth, strength, knowledge, comfort, guidance, the fruit of the Spirit, etc. The Holy Ghost/Spirit steers the genuine followers of Jesus Christ in the right direction.

Pentecost is an annual feast of the Jews *(Feast of Weeks)*. "The day of Pentecost" in this book is referring to the day of Pentecost recorded in the 2nd chapter of Acts.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

C
Water Baptism
for the remission of sins
(Further than infant sprinkling)

- Whether we read **about St. Paul's baptism**,
- Or we read about **John the Baptist baptizing** with the baptism of repentance,
- Or we read **St. Peter's instructions** which were given to people who wanted to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ,

We find water baptism "for the remission of sins"

"be baptized, and wash away thy sins" Acts 22:16

"16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord."

Water does not wash sins from our body.
Baptism is our ceremony for putting on Christ.
Being baptized into *(putting on)* Jesus Christ remits our sins.

"have been baptized into Christ
have put on Chris" Galatians 3:27

"27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ."

"for the remission of sins" Mark 1:4

"4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins."

"for the remission of sins" Luke 3:3

"3 And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins;"

"for the remission of sins" Acts 2:38

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost."

Water baptism is our ceremony for putting on, entering, joining, accepting, Jesus Christ, for the remission of sins.

Water Baptism wears **the Biblical tag**, **"for the remission of sins"**.

John the Baptist came on the scene, baptizing people with the baptism of repentance for the remission of their sins.

"for the remission of sins"

"he" (is John the Baptist) Luke 3:3

"3 And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins;"

We find Jesus' disciples, who were helping Jesus to minister, baptizing people *(the Bible does not say, if at that time, they were baptizing in the name of Jesus Christ.)*

"Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John" *John 4:1–2*

"1 ¶ When therefore the Lord knew how the Pharisees had heard that Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John,
2 *(Though Jesus himself baptized not, but his disciples,)"*

In Acts 19:1-7, we find people, who were baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism, being **re-baptized "in the name of the Lord Jesus"**. They upgraded from being followers of John the Baptist, to being joined to Jesus Christ, whom John the Baptist taught about. The followers of John the Baptist becoming joined to Jesus Christ was God's plan.

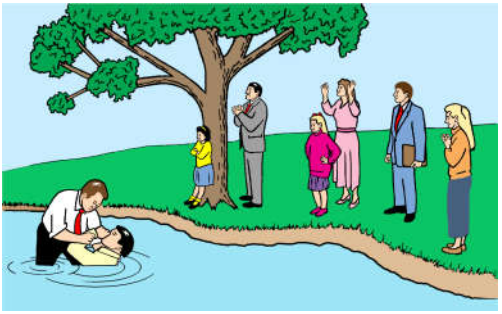
"When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus" Acts 19:1–7

"1 ¶ And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples,
2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.
3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.
4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.
5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.
7 And all the men were about twelve."

Baptism does not fly solo; it is only one part of putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ. The process is as follows: **(1)** We hear and believe the gospel of salvation through Jesus Christ, believing he is truly the Son of God; **(2)** We repent, making a firm unchanging decision to exit sin to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. Repentance will result with us remorsefully telling God we are sorry for the sins we committed, and striving with all of our heart never to sin again; **(3)** We are baptized into Christ, putting all our trust in Jesus Christ, accepting him as our Lord *(as the one we obey)*. **(4)** We receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, and strive to always obey Jesus Christ.

We are baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins. Being baptized into Christ takes us unto/into a place in Christ where our sins are forgiven, and where we are freed from sin's handcuffs/bonds. However, baptism is only one part *(the ceremony part)* of putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ.



Question: How can a dip in water remit sins?

Answer: Water does not remit sins. Baptism is our action for joining our self to Jesus Christ. When we genuinely join our self to Jesus Christ, the Bible way, our sins are forgiven, and we are filled with the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who continues molding us out of our sinning, as we cooperate with God.

Question: If baptism is for the remission of sins, do we need to keep being baptized regularly, because we are not perfect?

Answer: We do not need to be repeatedly baptized, because we are not perfect. Being repeatedly baptized would be repeatedly putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ, repeatedly converting from a life of sin to follow Jesus Christ. 1 John 1:7-9 is instructions for baptized Christians who fall short of being perfect while they are striving to obey Jesus Christ.

Re-baptism is performed if we have a question about our baptism being executed the Bible way. St. Paul re-baptized the people at Ephesus, because they were not baptized into Christ yet *(Acts 19:1–7)*.

God will enter and remain constantly inside us: to guide us; to produce the fruit of the Spirit in our lives, including good works; etc. God producing the fruit of the Spirit in us reveals the presence of God.

All the things of God must be done from the uttermost depth of our heart.

All the pieces of Christianity are tied together. We cannot be a genuine Christian by doing a few pieces of Christianity, and willfully rejecting the rest.

Remission of Sins is more than the forgiveness of sins; it goes on through the Holy Ghost/Spirit to mold us out of sinning *(removing sin's handcuffs)*. It gives us liberty to love and follow God in righteousness.

We need to recognize the immense power/authority in the name of "Jesus Christ" to remit our sins. His name is called over us when we are baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ".

Baptism is talked about as washing away our sins, even though the water does not wash sins from our body. This is because we are immersed/baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ" and come up out of the water with our sins

forgiven, and when we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we will be joined to Jesus Christ. However, being baptized into Christ *(putting on Jesus Christ)* must be a choice and action from the uttermost depth of our heart.

"why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins" Acts 22:16

"16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord."

Putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ saves us.

"*even* baptism doth also now save us" 1 Peter 3:20–21

"20 Which sometime were disobedient, when once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.
21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:"

By being baptized into Christ, we are converting from following the ways of the world/sin, and maybe another religion, to following Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

Some Bible scholars believe the Jews were familiar with the use and meaning of water baptism, before John the Baptist.



We have two different sets of directions for obtaining forgiveness from God.

The first set of instructions is for people who are outside of Jesus Christ. They are instructed to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ for the remission of their sins by obeying Acts 2:38.

Acts 2:38

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost."

The second set of instructions is for people who are walking in the light *(walking in God)*. These people have already joined Jesus Christ. They have been baptized into Christ, and have received the Holy Ghost/Spirit. If they sin, they are to confess it to God, repent, and strive with all their heart not to sin again.

"if we walk in the light"
(if we are walking in Christ) 1 John 1:7–9

"7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.
8 ¶ If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.
9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."

Use an exhaustive concordance, with a Word Study Dictionary, and prayerfully study remission of sins.

Another piece of the forgiveness picture: We reap what we sow.

Mark 11:26
"26 But if ye do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses."

Matthew 6:14–15
"14 For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you:
15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses."

Matthew 18:23–35
"23 Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, which would take account of his servants.
24 And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents.
25 But forasmuch as he had not to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and children, and all that he had, and payment to be made.
26 The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.
27 Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt.

28 But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellowservants, which owed him an hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took *him* by the throat, saying, Pay me that thou owest.
29 And his fellowservant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all.
30 And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt.
31 So when his fellowservants saw what was done, they were very sorry, and came and told unto their lord all that was done.
32 Then his lord, after that he had called him, said unto him, O thou wicked servant, I forgave thee all that debt, because thou desiredst me:
33 Shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellowservant, even as I had pity on thee?
34 And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him.
35 So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses."

May God bless you,
as you prayerfully search the Bible.

D

Why was Jesus baptized?

When we are on the topic of baptism for the remission of sins, people often ask "Why was Jesus baptized?" If we turn to the Bible, we will find Jesus Christ answering this question.

John the Baptist was baptizing people with the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.

"the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins" Mark 1:4

"4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins."

"the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins" Luke 3:3

3 And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins;"

"baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins" Matthew 3:6

"6 And were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins."

Then, Jesus Christ came to be baptized by John the Baptist. Why would Jesus Christ, the only sinless man, need to be baptized? *(He is sinless, because he is Almighty God in the flesh. God cannot sin.)*

Even John the Baptist questioned the baptizing of Jesus Christ. Matthew 3:14

"14 But John forbad him, saying, I have need to be baptized of thee, and comest thou to me?"

Jesus answered this question. Matthew 3:15

"15 And Jesus answering said unto him, Suffer *it to be so* now: for thus it becometh us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he suffered him."

Jesus Christ said he was baptized to fulfill all righteousness.

Some people desire a deeper understanding, but I do not know of any additional Scriptures on the subject. Since Jesus Christ answered the question, we know it is the correct answer.

E

Baptism means immersion

I am NOT saying we should immerse babies

In our English language, the word baptism is the name of a Christian ceremony. The word “baptism” is a Greek word. If we study its meaning, we will find it gives us information about the ceremony.

Our English New Testament was translated from Greek. When they translated it, they did not translate the baptism words into English. Baptism words are words like baptize, baptism, Baptist, etc. Translating would be transferring the Greek words into English words. When they came to the baptism words in the Bible, instead of transferring these Greek words into English words, they simply transferred them into the English alphabet/pronunciation; it is called transliteration. We have Greek words spelled with the English alphabet, using the English suffixes to mold them into the English language.

The Greek word “baptízō”, which we now have spelled in English, is “baptize”. It means to Dip/Immerse. How do we know the definition of the word? It is a Greek word; we can find the definition in an appropriate Greek dictionary, or in a New Testament Word Study Dictionary.

In Greek, “baptízō” *(baptize)* was an everyday word. If we wash our hands by immersing them in a container of water, we baptízō our hands. Baptízō is describing how we washed our hands: by immersing/dipping them in water.

Just as in English, the Greek language has different words for immersion, sprinkling, and pouring:



We can find words in the Bible indicating immersion:

Going into the water, and **coming out of the water**;
Baptizing where they had much water;
Words like buried and planted *(being put under)*.

Why would people go down into a river, or any body of water, to sprinkle people, or to pour a little water on their head? Why did they choose a place for baptism which had much water? I believe they wanted plenty of water for immersing the people.

IN the Jordan river Matthew 3:6

"6 And were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins."

"out of the water" Matthew 3:16

"16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:"

"they went down both into the water"

"they were come up out of the water" Acts 8:38–39

"38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.
39 And when they were come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing."

"because there was much water there" John 3:23

"23 And John also was baptizing in Aenon near to Salim, because there was much water there: and they came, and were baptized."

"Buried" (being put under) Colossians 2:12

"12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with *him* through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead."

"buried" "planted" *(being put under)* Romans 6:3–5

"3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?
4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.
5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness* of *his* resurrection:"

I do not know anybody who questions if immersion is Biblical baptism. Immersion fits the baptisms found in the Bible, and it fulfills the meaning of the word "baptize".

Sprinkling or pouring cannot be Biblically shown to be a permissible substitute for baptism *(immersion/dip)*.

I believe the foundation for sprinkling is built with assumptions and conclusions; they seem to stem from the Old Testament Law of Moses concerning the ceremonial washings and sprinklings.

Why did sprinkling and pouring get started? I believe it was reasoned immersion was not appropriate for some people: infants; the sick and dying; etc. The Bible does not say what we are to do when people are physically unable to be immersed.

Does the Bible declare that they baptized people by immersion? Absolutely! The Bible says it many times. However, most people do not see it, because it was never translated into English. It says "immersion/dip", in the Greek language, every time the Bible says "baptize," or any of the baptism words.

I believe, **if the baptism words were translated** into English, we should have things like the following:

- John being called the **Immerser**, or the **Dipper**, instead of the **Baptist**.
- "Repent and be **immersed"**, or **dipped**, instead of "Repent and be **baptized"**.
- People being **immersed**, or **dipped**, in the Jordan river, instead of people being **baptized** in the Jordan river.

Being immersed or dipped means nothing unless it is a genuine baptism ceremony, performed with a right heart. Being baptized *(immersed/dipped)* in the name of "Jesus Christ" is the ceremony for entering *(putting on)* Jesus Christ.

Saying, "I was baptized by sprinkling", is saying, "I was immersed by sprinkling". This is because the word baptize means immersion/dip; it does not translate sprinkle or pour.

I do not believe immersion is intended for infants; it is too dangerous. Infants have their own ceremony *(read the next chapter)*. I believe after we believe on Christ, and choose to follow him from the depth of our heart, we are to be immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of our sins.

Immersing repented believers has Biblical support. Everything else *(sprinkling, pouring, infants, etc.)* falls under assumptions and conclusions.

Considering the great importance of baptism, I believe it needs to be performed the way the Bible portrays it: by immersion. Why should we settle for assumptions, when we have Bible?

If we do not use some of our time to research the things of God, we are not doing our best. I challenge everyone to research the word "baptize". Get a good New Testament Word Study Dictionary, and check it out for yourself. If you do not own a good New Testament Word Study Dictionary, you need to buy one.

Sometimes the Greek meaning of the word baptize is noted in a general dictionary or encyclopedia. But we need to beware, most of these books reflect what baptism has become, what it has evolved into, rather than defining the Greek word from which it was transliterated, and its Biblical correctness.

In research work we need to separate facts from opinions. Even a good New Testament Word Study Dictionary will likely insert the author's opinions and conclusions.

I believe there is a big difference between a person who was not baptized *(immersed/dipped),* because it was totally impossible, and between a person who simply ignores to be baptized *(immersed/dipped)* the correct way. If we were baptized; and then we learn a more perfect way to be baptized, I believe we need to be baptized again the correct way. We do not want to brush it off. St. Paul took people who were baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism, and re-baptized them in the name of the Lord Jesus *(Acts 19:1–7)*.

May God bless you with truth, as you do prayerful research.

F
Water Baptism
Further than infant sprinkling

We need to give our infants to God in a ceremony; it is the proper/correct thing to do. We need to put our children into God's hands: to be guided, overseen, and protected by him. Some churches call this ceremony dedication, and other churches sprinkle some water on the infant and call it baptism. As an infant, Jesus was circumcised and presented to God *(Luke 2:21–22)*. Yes, we need to give our children to God in a ceremony.

I believe infant sprinkling is a case of calling infant dedication, "baptism".

In many churches water baptism is quite different than how it is portrayed in the Bible. In the Bible people were baptized immediately after they believed and repented.

Infant baptism is not mentioned in the Bible. Everything about it is based on **conclusions** and **assumptions**. Infant sprinkling does not parallel the water baptisms of the Bible, thus many people do not believe it is, or trust it to be, a valid baptism.

Many churches sprinkle infants and call it "baptism". They are following their church's tradition, and assuming the following:

Assuming infants were baptized with the households: the Bible talks about households being baptized;

Assuming sprinkling, or pouring, is a permissible substitute for baptism: the word "baptism" means immersion/dip;

Assuming, since circumcision was performed on infants, following Scriptural instructions; baptism may also be performed on infants, even though we have no Biblical directives.

Some people believe these assumptions are correct. But assumptions cannot be Biblically verified: correct, or incorrect.

Other people assume, since the Biblical portrayal of baptism does not seem to fit infants, baptism is not intended for them. They **assume** baptism is not required until a child is old enough to personally believe on the Lord Jesus Christ.

In the Bible, we repeatedly find believing and repenting tied to baptism. Infants are too young to choose, believe, and repent.

To be baptized first, and believe later, is not found in the Bible.

The word "baptism" (baptízō) was an everyday Greek word meaning to dip/immerse. Infants are too young to be immersed; it is not safe.

If we would gather pastors and priests from the various church organizations, and ask them to explain infant baptism from the Bible, we would get different opinions, conclusions, assumptions, beliefs, etc. One pastor will point to verses to support his opinion, while another pastor will come back with verses to dissolve the opinion. The Bible does not address infant baptism. Infant baptism is a subject full of debate, disagreements and unanswered questions.

If we are genuinely baptized *(immersed)* into Jesus Christ after we believe and repent, following the Biblical instructions, our baptism is confirmed; it is above the questions and debates.

The Bible does not answer every question.

Question: Are we to baptize infants?

Answer: The Holy Bible does not appear to answer this question.

Question: Are we to give our children to God in a ceremony?

Answer: We find people throughout the Bible giving their children to God; even Jesus was circumcised and presented to God as an infant. I believe we need to give our infants/children to God in a ceremony. But what kind of a ceremony? The Bible does not answer this question.

Question: Is sprinkling an accepted mode of baptism?

Answer: The word “baptism” means an immersion dip. I cannot find any Biblical support for any other mode, including sprinkling.

Question: What are we to do for the people who are not in physical condition to be immersed? Does God make exceptions for them? What are we to do?

Answer: The Bible does not appear to answer these questions. God is the judge, and he is good and merciful. But to say what God’s judgment is going to be in any situation is probably our opinion. However, I believe if someone genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ, God will provide a way to do what is necessary. We need to remember God always does what is good and righteous.

Some people fill in the unanswered questions with their thoughts, opinions, and beliefs. However, when people have matured enough to believe and repent, many of the “what should we do’s” disappear, and we have straight forward Biblical instructions.

Since the Bible does not answer many questions, we need to do what we believe is correct, until we can follow the Biblical instructions. When we are mature enough to obey the Biblical instructions, I believe we need to obey them; because Biblical instructions always override our thoughts, opinions, and beliefs.

Some churches will not use any water in the infant ceremony, and they put forth an extra effort to make sure it is called “dedication”. Their purpose is to ward off confusion that may hinder someone from being baptized after he personally believes on the Lord Jesus Christ. Someone might say “I was baptized as an infant; I do not need to be baptized”. Holding to his infant sprinkling, he might ignore being baptized the way it can be Biblically verified.

Some parents have a deep concern/worry: "What if households being baptized included the infants? Where would my child spend eternity if he would die before being baptized?" This worry stems from baptism being the ceremony for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ.

The infant ceremony is not the problem;
Infant ceremonies need to be performed.
We need to give our children to God.

The disagreement is over the following question:
Is the infant ceremony a genuine baptism,
or is it a dedication being called "baptism"?

This answer affects the following question:
If I was baptized by sprinkling as an infant,
am I to be baptized into Jesus Christ
of my own freewill *(my choice)*,
when I mature and personally decide to follow Christ?

I believe we are to do an infant ceremony, and be baptized into Christ when we mature and personally believe and repent from the depth of our heart, because this is when it can be Biblically verified as being baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of sins.

We need to always do our best. We should never say "That is good enough", when we can do better.

I consider all infant ceremonies to be dedications, because they cannot be Biblically verified as baptism.

I believe

As parents, we need to give our children
to God in a ceremony: some people call it "dedication",
and others call it "infant baptism".

I believe that when a child is matured,
the responsibility of giving himself to Jesus Christ,
and being baptized into Christ, passes unto him.

At this point he is capable of believing and repenting, and can be baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of sins *(Acts 2:38)*, the way it can be Biblically verified. Deciding to follow Jesus Christ is a decision which must come from the depth of his own heart.

I believe children at a young age are capable of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, and are capable of personally choosing to follow him.

We may think our infant sprinkling is good enough, but is it good enough when we can do better? We need to strive to do all the things of God accurately. When we learn how to do something better, we need to do it the better way. Our love for God should cause us to do our very best in all the things of God.

There is more to giving ourselves to Jesus Christ than water baptism. Water baptism is the physical part, and we need to remember it wears the Biblical tag "for the remission of sins".

Belief and Baptism *(putting on Christ)* are tied together.

"He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved" Mark 16:16

"16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned."

"when they believed"

"they were baptized" Acts 8:12–13

"12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.
13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done."

Belief & Baptism "and thy house" Acts 16:31–34

"31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.
32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway.
34 And when he had brought them into his house, he set meat before them, and rejoiced, believing in God with all his house."

"believed, and were baptized" Acts 18:8

"8 And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized."

Belief & Baptism Acts 19:4–5

"4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.
5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus."

They Believed, were Baptized, and received the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Acts 10:43–48

"43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.
44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.
45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.
46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,
47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?
48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days."

The Bible instructs us to do certain things, in certain ways. But what about cases where things cannot be done, or where they do not get done, and what if the things were done incorrectly, does God make exceptions?

I do not believe the Bible gives a solid answer to this question. I view answers as opinions. We need to remember, God is always good, and he will always do the right thing.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

G

Once we believe and repent, we need to be baptized immediately.

We need to be baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins as soon as possible, for we could die unexpectedly. In the Bible, when someone believed on Jesus Christ, they immediately baptized him; they did not wait until Sunday.

The jailor and his family were baptized immediately after a midnight earthquake; they did not even wait until daylight.

"the same hour of the night" "straightway" Acts 16:31–33

"31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.
32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway."

"arose, and was baptized" Acts 9:17–18

"17 And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.
18 And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized."

The verse above is the same event as the verse below. Ananias had just prayed for Saul/Paul to receive his sight.

"why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized" Acts 22:16

"16 And now why tarriest thou? arise, and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, calling on the name of the Lord."

"the same day" Acts 2:41

"41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand souls."

Baptized Immediately Acts 8:35–38

"35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

36 And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized?

37 And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.

38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him."

"When they heard *this*, they were baptized"

(Immediately) Acts 19:2–6



"2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.

3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.

4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied."

The belief is they obeyed St. Peter, and were baptized immediately. Acts 10:44–48

“44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.
45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.
46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,
47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?
48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

We need to be baptized into *(put on)* Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins as soon as possible, for we could die unexpectedly.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

H
Being Baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ"

Baptizing in the name of "Jesus Christ" is complying with the Bible based on Biblical consistency *(repetition)*.

Baptizing using the descriptive names of God *(Father, Son, and Holy Ghost)* is based on an understanding of a single verse *(Matthew 28:19)*. But I believe Biblical consistency reveals the correct understanding.

Is the verbal signature for Christian baptism to be

"in the name of Jesus Christ",

or

"in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost" ?

Whose NAME are we to use?

Does it really matter? Is it important?

Christians in the Bible always used the name of "Jesus Christ", or "Lord Jesus" etc., as the verbal signature for applying God's authority to baptism, healings, and the casting out of devils. We have Matthew 28:19, but we cannot find one action in the Bible being verbally signed "in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost". The Bible talks about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit. However, when we study the Bible, we do not find these descriptive names of God being used as the verbal signature for applying God's authority.

We are to do all *(everything)*
in the name of "Jesus Christ".

"*do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus" Colossians 3:17

"17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him."

Problem: The traditional interpretation, of Matthew 28:19, does not appear to fit the rest of the New Testament. This chapter will show you the problem. Matthew 28:19 is part of the instructions Jesus Christ gave to the eleven Disciples before he ascended up into heaven.

"baptizing them in the name of the Father,
and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost" Matthew 28:19

"19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:"

Nine days later, St. Peter instructed people to be baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ", and the other Apostles were with him. Did St. Peter and the Apostles take it upon themselves to change Christ's instructions in Matthew 28:19, when they instructed the people to be baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ"? I believe the Apostles understood Christ's instructions/commandment, and they acted accordingly.

Nine days after Matthew 28:19

"Peter, standing up with the eleven"
(the 11 Apostles, [12 minus Judas]) Acts 2:14

"14 ¶ But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all *ye* that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:"

St. Peter speaking to people who wanted to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ.

"Peter said unto them, Repent,
and be baptized every one of you
in the name of Jesus Christ
for the remission of sins" Act 2:37–39

"37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?
38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

Baptism in the name of "Jesus Christ" is important.

St. Paul took people who were baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism and re-baptize them in the name of the **"Lord Jesus"**.

"baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus" Acts 19:3–5

"3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.
4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.
5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus."

Why did St. Paul re-baptize people who were previously baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism?

When Christ came on the scene, the followers of John the Baptist were to convert and become followers of Jesus Christ; baptism is the converting ceremony. When St. Paul baptized them in the name of the "Lord Jesus", they put on and became followers/disciples of Jesus Christ. Water baptism is the ceremony for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ.

Baptizing into Jesus Christ, by using his name

"have been baptized into Christ" (baptized **into**)
"have put on Christ" (put on) *Galatians 3:27*

"27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ."

"as were baptized into Jesus Christ" *(baptized **into**)* Romans 6:3

"3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?"

"the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized" Acts 8:12

"12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women."

“they were baptized
in the name of the Lord Jesus” Acts 8:16

“16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”

“he commanded them to be baptized
in the name of the Lord” Acts 10:48

“48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

“there is none other name under heaven
given among men,
whereby we must be saved”
(the name of “Jesus Christ”) Acts 4:12

“12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.”

Everything was performed in the name of “Jesus Christ”

Note the spoken words, the verbal signature.

“In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth
rise up and walk” Acts 3:6–9

“6 Then Peter said, Silver and gold have I none; but such as I have give I thee: In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth rise up and walk.
7 And he took him by the right hand, and lifted *him* up: and immediately his feet and ankle bones received strength.
8 And he leaping up stood, and walked, and entered with them into the temple, walking, and leaping, and praising God.
9 And all the people saw him walking and praising God:”

“through faith in his name”
(the name of “Jesus Christ”) Acts 3:16

“16 And his name through faith in his name hath made this man strong, whom ye see and know: yea, the faith which is by him hath given him this perfect soundness in the presence of you all.”

“by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth” Acts 4:10

“10 Be it known unto you all, and to all the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom ye crucified, whom God raised from the dead, *even* by him doth this man stand here before you whole.”

“that signs and wonders may be done by the name of thy holy child Jesus” Acts 4:29–30

“29 And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto thy servants, that with all boldness they may speak thy word,
30 By stretching forth thine hand to heal; and that signs and wonders may be done by the name of thy holy child Jesus.”

Note the spoken words.

“Jesus Christ maketh thee whole” Acts 9:34

“34 And Peter said unto him, Æneas, Jesus Christ maketh thee whole: arise, and make thy bed. And he arose immediately.”

“in the name of the Lord” James 5:14

“14 Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord:”

Note the spoken words, the verbal signature.

“I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ” Acts 16:17–18

“17 The same followed Paul and us, and cried, saying, These men are the servants of the most high God, which shew unto us the way of salvation.
18 And this did she many days. But Paul, being grieved, turned and said to the spirit, I command thee in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her. And he came out the same hour.”

“the devils are subject unto us through thy name” Luke 10:17

“17 ¶ And the seventy returned again with joy, saying, Lord, even the devils are subject unto us through thy name.”

Vagabond Jews, exorcists, attempted to duplicate the actions of St. Paul by attempting to use the verbal signature "Lord Jesus".

"vagabond Jews, exorcists, took upon them to call over them which had evil spirits the name of the Lord Jesus"

"and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified" Acts 19:13–17

"13 ¶ Then certain of the vagabond Jews, exorcists, took upon them to call over them which had evil spirits the name of the Lord Jesus, saying, We adjure you by Jesus whom Paul preacheth.
14 And there were seven sons of *one* Sceva, a Jew, *and* chief of the priests, which did so.
15 And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye?
16 And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.
17 And this was known to all the Jews and Greeks also dwelling at Ephesus; and fear fell on them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified."

"In my name shall they cast out devils" Mark 16:17

"17 And these signs shall follow them that believe; In my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues;"

"casting out devils in thy name" Mark 9:38–40

"38 And John answered him, saying, Master, we saw one casting out devils in thy name, and he followeth not us: and we forbad him, because he followeth not us.
39 But Jesus said, Forbid him not: for there is no man which shall do a miracle in my name, that can lightly speak evil of me.
40 For he that is not against us is on our part."

We need to ask the BIG question.

Why can't we find any actions in the Bible
being verbally signed with
the descriptive names of God:
Father, Son, and Holy Ghost?

In the Bible, we find Christians performing
everything in the name of "Jesus Christ".

Believing on the name of "Jesus Christ"

"to them that believe on his name" John 1:12

"12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name:"

"that believing ye might have life through his name" John 20:31

"31 But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name."

"because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God" John 3:18

"18 He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God."

"that through his name" Acts 10:43

"43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins."

"unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life" 1 John 5:13

"13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God."

Ask in the name of "Jesus Christ"

"If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do *it*" John 14:12–14

"12 ¶ Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater *works* than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father.
13 And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.
14 If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do *it*."

"ask of the Father in my name" John 15:16

"16 Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and *that* your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you."

Peter and John were commanded not to speak or teach in the name of "_____".

"commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus" Acts 4:16–18

"16 Saying, What shall we do to these men? for that indeed a notable miracle hath been done by them *is* manifest to all them that dwell in Jerusalem; and we cannot deny *it*.
17 But that it spread no further among the people, let us straitly threaten them, that they speak henceforth to no man in this name.
18 And they called them, and commanded them not to speak at all nor teach in the name of Jesus."

The name of Jesus Christ

Sometimes preachers offered large sums of money to anyone who could find in the Bible where someone was baptized using the descriptive names of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.



Why?

They wanted us to search the Scriptures and see for ourselves that Christians always used the name of "Jesus Christ" to activate the power of God. It was a challenge to put us on a path of Biblical discovery. Nothing is more convincing than seeing and discovering things in the Scriptures for ourselves.

We are to do everything in the name of "Jesus Christ".

"*do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus" Colossians 3:17

"17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him."

Jesus Christ's name is used to activate his authority.

The phrases "In the name of", and "in the authority of", are often interchangeable. One's name is used to execute his authority: like a signature. Genuine Christians have the right and the responsibility to use Jesus Christ's name /authority for appropriate purposes.

I believe the name of "Jesus Christ", when properly used by a genuine Christian as the verbal signature, contains the authority of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit. This is because the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are one and the same God/Deity.

How can Matthew 28:19 fit the other Bible verses?

"baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost" Matthew 28:19

"19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:"

Words have multiple meanings/definitions. The same sentence can be read to mean different things. What is Matthew 28:19 really saying?

Is Matthew 28:19 saying we are to use the verbal signature "in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost"?

Is Matthew 28:19 saying we are to be baptized in the authority of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost? *(The word "name" can be interpreted to mean authority.)*

Some people believe Matthew 28:19 is saying we are to baptize in the NAME**:** one name which is of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost *(one name, "Jesus," which belongs not only to the Son, but also belongs to the Father and the Holy Ghost/Spirit; one name for one God)*. They believe this because this is the explanation that puts Matthew 28:19 in harmony with the other Bible verses. *(This explanation can gain more strength when we study the Greek word which was translated **"and"**.)*

In Matthew 28:19, the word "name" is not plural, it is singular: "baptizing them in the name" *(one name/one authority)*.

Jesus said he came in his Father's name. This could be read to conclude that the Son of man and his Father have the same proper name and authority. Jesus Christ having his Father's name is appropriate, because he and his Father are one and the same God/Deity. It is believed that the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, are one God, whose name is "Jesus". The name "Jesus" means: "Jehovah saves".

"I am come in my Father's name" John 5:43

"43 I am come in my Father's name, and ye receive me not: if another shall come in his own name, him ye will receive."

If we only look at Matthew 28:19, baptizing using the verbal signature **"in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost,"** can appear correct. But the problem remains; the use of this verbal signature does not appear to parallel the rest of the New Testament.

Remember: For truth, Matthew 28:19, and all the verses that use the name of "Jesus Christ" need to agree. When Bible verses seem to disagree, the problem is in our interpretation/understanding.

Why do churches baptize using the descriptive names of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost? I believe it is because they see the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, as three separate individual God/Deity beings, and they want to include everyone. They see baptism in the name of "Jesus Christ" as Son only baptism. But how can there be an everyone, since the Bible declares there is only one God *(the Holy One of Israel, not the Holy Three)*, and he is the only one who is God/Deity.

The next chapter is on the question "Is there one God, or are there three separate individual God/Deity beings, who work together in unity?" I believe there is one God, and he branches out and presents himself to mankind as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit. We only have one who is God /Deity, so who are we leaving out when we are baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ".

The phrase "in the name of" being used for God's business

In the King James Version Old Testament, we find the phrase "in the name of the LORD". In the Old Testament, the word "LORD" *(all capital letters)* is a substitute descriptive name for the unpronounceable proper name of God: YHWH.

We do not know how to properly pronounce his name, because it contains no vowels. This proper name of God, YHWH, is in the Old Testament thousands of times; but instead of writing the letters YHWH in the Bible, they wrote the word "LORD" *(all capital letters)*. Some people trying to pronounce YHWH came up with "JEHOVAH" and "YAHWEH".

We also find the phrase “in the name of the Lord” in the New Testament. In the New Testament the word “Lord” /“LORD” means lordship *(Jesus Christ is our Lord)*; it is not a substitute name for a proper name. In the New Testament, the proper name of “Jesus” starts being used in the phrase “in the name of _____”

“in the name of Jesus Christ”

“in the name of the Lord Jesus”

“In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ”

We have one instance of the descriptive names of God being placed in the phrase “in the name of _____”: *(in Matthew 28:19:* **“in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost”***)*.

Conducting business in the name of “Jesus Christ” can be divided into two categories:

Business that <u>does not</u> involve the verbal signature, “In the name of Jesus Christ”.

We could give a needful drink of water to someone without saying “in the name of Jesus Christ”. Even though nothing was said, it is a form of doing things in the name of, acting for, Jesus Christ.

Business that involves the verbal signature, “In the name of Jesus Christ”.

In some areas Christians need to use the power /authority of Jesus Christ: in baptism; in healing; in casting out demons; etc. In these areas, using the verbal signature “In the name of Jesus Christ” is standard procedure. It is pronouncing Christ's authority upon the action.

The name “Jesus” is not a unique name. The word “Christ” or “Lord” is added to the name “Jesus” to identify which Jesus. The name “Jesus Christ” is referring to the Jesus who is the Christ *(the Messiah)*. The name “Lord Jesus” is referring to the Jesus who is our Lord.

The name “Jesus” (Joshua) means JEHOVAH Saves. The name “Christ” means “the Messiah”.

Descriptive Names, and Actual Names

A title/descriptive name is a name that describes someone, or the position they hold.

John Walker had a son attending college.

He sent him a birthday card containing a check.

He signed the card with his title/descriptive name “Dad,” and he signed the check “John Walker.”

Now stop and think.

“Father”, “Son”, and “Holy Ghost”, are descriptive names of God. Even “God” is a descriptive name.

In the Bible, we do not find Christians using the following:

In the name of the Son rise up and walk.

In the name of the Son of God rise up and walk.

In the Bible, we find Christ’s followers using his ACTUAL name to conduct official business.

Descriptive names, or Proper name

The names of God, “Father”, “Son”, and “Holy Ghost”, are good descriptive names of God. But the Christians in the Bible were repeatedly instructed to use, and did use, the name of “Jesus Christ”/“Lord Jesus” for activating God's authority.

“and preached unto him Jesus”

“and he baptized him” Acts 8:35–38

“35 Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus.

36 And as they went on *their* way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, *here is* water; what doth hinder me to be baptized?

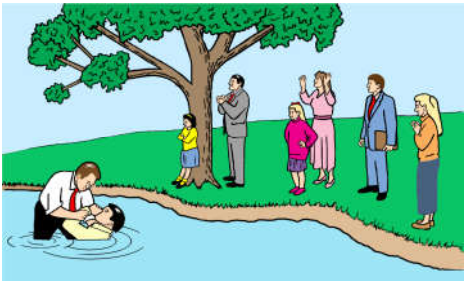
37 And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God.

38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.”

Baptizing in the name of “Jesus Christ” does not omit the Father and the Holy Ghost/Spirit, because the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are one and the same God. Baptizing in the name of “Jesus Christ” is following Biblical instructions based on Biblical consistency.

Anytime we do official business for Jesus Christ, we need to use his actual name. His name, genuinely used as a verbal signature, carries his authority. Genuine Christians have the right and responsibility to use his name/authority for appropriate purposes. When we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of our sins, the power/authority in the name of Jesus Christ is applied to the baptism.

Normally, when we have Biblical questions, we go to our pastor. However, we need to be aware that many pastors have handcuffed themselves to a particular set of beliefs/doctrines: the beliefs of their denomination. Most pastors feel obligated to defend these beliefs, and do not feel free to honestly consider beliefs that appear contrary to them. If a pastor would believe and start teaching things outside his denomination’s beliefs, he might lose his job, maybe a retirement, etc. I am not saying pastors will avoid giving you an honest answer, but they may have strong incentives to avoid considering things that do not agree with their denomination’s beliefs. Some pastors might mentally block *(refuse to consider)* some Bible verses, because they are afraid of the consequences which could result from changing their beliefs.



Biblical study will show everything performed in the Bible, which Christians performed “in the name of ___”, was executed in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

We find nothing being verbally signed in the Bible using the descriptive names of God: “in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost”. The name of “Jesus Christ” is the verbal signature for activating God's authority

It is very important to follow God’s instructions to the best of our knowledge and ability. Since you are being told about baptism in the name of “Jesus Christ”, it is now your responsibility to prayerfully examine it in the Bible.

Look up the word, “name,” in your exhaustive concordance; you can also do this search on a computer with a Bible program. Look for New Testament verses containing the words “in the name of”. On a piece of paper write down all the verses that use the name of “Jesus Christ”, “Lord Jesus”, etc., as the verbal signature for baptism, healing, and casting out devils. On another piece of paper write down all the verses that use the verbal signature “in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost”. These papers can be a real eye-opener; the Christian verbal signature will stand out.

Nine days after Christ instructed the eleven Disciples /Apostles in Matthew 28:19, we find people desiring to give themselves to Jesus Christ. They asked St. Peter and the other Apostles what they needed to do. St. Peter, with the Apostles with him, told these people to repent and be baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ” for the remission of sins. Then he told them they would receive the “Promise": the “Gift” of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. All genuine Christians receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(the Spirit of God)* as a promised gift from God.

(Twelve Disciples minus Judas equals eleven.)

I believe Biblical consistency reveals
the correct understanding.

In the Church at Corinth, some Christians were saying they were of a preacher, naming him. St. Paul sternly pointed out Christians are of Jesus Christ, not of the preacher.

"were ye baptized in the name of Paul?" 1 Corinthians 1:12–15

"12 Now this I say, that every one of you saith, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ.
13 Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?
14 ¶ I thank God that I baptized none of you, but Crispus and Gaius;
15 Lest any should say that I had baptized in mine own name."

St. Paul said this because baptism is the putting-on/joining/converting ceremony. Baptizing people in the name of "Paul" would be putting-on/joining/converting people to St. Paul. The people were baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ"; they put-on/joined/converted themselves to Jesus Christ, not to the preacher who baptized them.

"Father", "Son", and "Holy Ghost/Spirit" are good descriptive names of God. However, we do not see these names being used as the verbal signature.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.



a

The Bible declares there is only one God. He is God alone, by himself. The Holy ONE of Israel

• **My Biblical studies tell me** the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit are one God, not three separate individual Deity beings, who are joined in unity.

• **If the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit are** one and the same God/Deity; then, no one is being ignored, or left out, when we baptize in the name of "Jesus Christ".

• **How many** Deity beings *(Gods)* exist? One or Three?

• **How can Jesus Christ be** God, and God's Son, at the same time?

• **Is Jesus Christ God, or is he a second Deity being**, who is working in unity with the God who talked to Abraham?

• **Is the Holy Ghost/Spirit God's own** Spirit? Or is the Holy Ghost/Spirit another Deity being who is working in unity with God?

• **Are the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit,** three manifestations of the one God/Deity being? *(One God [one Deity being] reaching out to mankind, functioning as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit?)*

• **Are the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit,** three separate individual God/Deity beings? *(Not one and the same God/Deity being, but a team/union of separate God/Deity beings working in unity?)*

• **If the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are one and the same God/Deity being** *(one God)*, then baptizing in the name of "Jesus Christ" is simply baptizing in the name of God.

• **How can Jesus Christ be** the Son of the Father, when his conception was of the Holy Ghost/Spirit?

This chapter is my understanding about the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit being only One.

Understanding the Godhead; what the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit are to each other; is a major fork in the road of understanding God. What we believe about the Godhead will affect our interpretation of other Scriptures, including the verses about water baptism.

A problem: God is very different from mankind. Yet in mankind's effort to comprehend God, mankind persists in visualizing God similar to mankind *(but who is invisible, all powerful, all knowing, perfect in love, etc.)*, but they cannot begin to imagine God without him having some of mankind's limitations. But God does not parallel mankind, because he is God!

The Bible out rightly declares there is only one who is God, and this is declared repeatedly throughout the Bible. The Bible also talks about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost /Spirit who are all God, yet there is only one who is God. How can this be? I believe the one and only God has the ability to be whatever he wants to be, and to be as many as he wants to be, simultaneously with interactions. He is Almighty God; he cannot be paralleled to mankind, with some of mankind's limitations.

The Bible makes some statements about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, that if the statements were talking about human beings, it would demand two or three human beings; yet with God, in God's world, there is only one who is God. Mankind only understands how things are in the human world, and mankind does not understand how things are in God's world. When it comes to the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit being only one *(one and the same)*, it does not parallel anything in mankind's world of understanding; yet mankind still tries to explain God, by trying to make God to fit into mankind's very shallow understanding.

The Godhead does not parallel anything in our world. We want to say “The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are **like this**,” or “they are **like that**”, but we have nothing in our human world to which we can parallel the Godhead. We come up with all kinds of illustrations/explanations trying to explain the Godhead, but none of them produces a comprehensive understanding of God.

God lives in a place far past human understanding. Portraying God to parallel the world of human beings happens naturally, and it is a major problem in understanding the Godhead: what the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are to each other. Human understanding is far too shallow to completely understand God.

God lives in a place far past human understanding and mankind’s limitations

Isaiah 55:9

“9 For *as* the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.”

In this book, I talk about different people and churches cherry-picking Bible verses that appear to support what they choose to believe, and give little consideration to Bible verses which take away from the things they choose to believe. The subject of the Godhead *(this chapter)* is a prime example of how people and churches can pick and ignore Bible verses according to their preference.

Some churches/people focus on Bible verses that appear, to the human mind, to be saying there are two or three Deity beings. Some of them say the word, “one,” means “unity/united”, trying to make things fit into what they choose to believe, trying to make them fit inside human understanding.

The problem is, there are Bible verses in the Old and New Testaments declaring there is only one who is God /Deity. We must not ignore these Bible verses.



There are other churches and people who see how many times the Bible declares there is only one who is God/Deity, and they focus and preach from these verses.

Even Jesus tells us there is only ONE who is good → God. Mark 10:18

"18 And Jesus said unto him, Why callest thou me good? *there is* none good but one, *that is*, God."

For truth, we need to put **all** the Bible verses in front of us**:**

(1) the Bible verses that can appear, to the human mind, to portray **three** Deity beings,

(2) the Bible verses which declare there **is only one** who is God/Deity.

On the surface, these two kinds/sets of Bible verses can appear, to the human mind *(which comprehends things as things are in the human world)*, to be completely contrary to each other. However, I believe that in God's world, they are all in harmony.

The Question is:

Are the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit
three manifestations/forms of one and the same God?

Or are they three separate individual Deity/God beings,
who work in unity?

Our answer to this question will affect
our interpretation of many other Bible verses.

First, I am going to show you some Bible verses which appear to mankind's thinking/reasoning as declaring two or three separate God/Deity beings.

Then, I am going to show you some Bible verses which declare there is only one who is God.



Section 1

Some Bible verses *(like the following Bible verses)* talk about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit: individually; as Deity with interactions; with wills; with communications between them; and use plural pronouns. Some people believe these actions declare there are three Deity beings.

Some people choose to focus on these *(the following)* Bible verses. They believe these type of Bible verses prove there are three separate Deity/God beings. The problem is, there are other Bible verses which say there is only one God *(One Deity being equals one God)*.

"we will come unto him,
and make our abode with him" John 14:23

"23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him."

"the Holy Ghost,
whom the Father will send in my name" John 14:26

"26 But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you."

"not my will, but thine" Luke 22:42

"42 Saying, Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but thine, be done."

The Father knows,
but the Son does not know.

Mark 13:31–32

"31 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.
32 But of that day and *that* hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father."



“the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost” 2 Corinthians 13:14

“14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, *be* with you all. Amen.”

“in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost” Matthew 28:19

“19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:”

“I had with thee before the world was” John 17:5

“5 And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.”

“is on the right hand of God” 1 Peter 3:21–22

“21 ¶ The like figure whereunto *even* baptism doth also now save us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ:
22 Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.”

“the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ” 1 John 1:3

“3 That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship *is* with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.”

Section 2

Some people/churches say, teaching three separate individual Deity beings in unity is teaching a three Gods in unity belief, because one Deity being is one God, and three Deity beings are three Gods. Since the Bible strongly proclaims that there is only one God, they see the teachings of three separate Deity beings in unity as a three separate Gods in unity belief, which is contrary to the Bible.

We need to see the Bible verses that declare there is only one who is God, or we would only see part of the picture. We would be missing all the Bible verses that declare there is only one who is God/Deity. If we want truth, the verses we just read need to fit the following oneness verses.

As we read the following Bible verses, we need to ask our self, "How many separate Deity/God beings exist?". We need to note all the strong singular pronouns.

"*there is* no God else beside me"
"*there is* none beside me"
"I *am* God, and *there is* none else" Isaiah 45:21–22

"21 Tell ye, and bring *them* near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? *who* hath told it from that time? *have* not I the LORD? and *there is* no God else beside me; a just God and a Savior; *there is* none beside me. 22 Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I *am* God, and *there is* none else."

"I *am* the LORD, and *there is* none else,
there is no God beside me" Isaiah 45:5

"5 ¶ I *am* the LORD, and *there is* none else, *there is* no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me:"

"beside me *there is* no God" Isaiah 44:6

"6 Thus saith the LORD the King of Israel, and his redeemer the LORD of hosts; I *am* the first, and I *am* the last; and beside me *there is* no God."

"Thou believest that there is one God;
thou doest well" James 2:19

"19 Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble."

"the only wise God" 1 Timothy 1:17

"17 Now unto the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, *be* honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

"I *am* the LORD;
and *there is* none else" Isaiah 45:18

"18 For thus saith the LORD that created the heavens; God himself that formed the earth and made it; he hath established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I *am* the LORD; and *there is* none else."

"I *am* God, and *there is* none else"
"*there is* none like me" Isaiah 46:9

"9 Remember the former things of old: for I *am* God, and *there is* none else; *I am* God, and *there is* none like me,"

“thou *art* God alone” Psalms 86:10

“10 For thou *art* great, and doest wondrous things: thou *art* God alone.”

“I, *even* I, *am* he,
and *there is* no god with me” Deuteronomy 32:39

“39 ¶ See now that I, *even* I, *am* he, and *there is* no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither *is there any* that can deliver out of my hand.”

“*there is* none beside thee” 1 Samuel 2:2

“2 *There is* none holy as the LORD: for *there is* none beside thee: neither *is there* any rock like our God.”

“*there is* no savior beside me” Hosea 13:4

“4 Yet I *am* the LORD thy God from the land of Egypt, and thou shalt know no god but me: for *there is* no savior beside me.”

“one LORD” Deuteronomy 6:4

“4 ¶ Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God *is* one LORD:”

“*there is* none like thee,
neither *is there any* God beside thee” 2 Samuel 7:22

“22 Wherefore thou art great, O LORD God: for *there is* none like thee, neither *is there any* God beside thee, according to all that we have heard with our ears.”

Only one deity being

“Is there a God beside me?
yea, *there is* no God” Isaiah 44:8

“8 Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have not I told thee from that time, and have declared *it*? ye *are* even my witnesses. Is there a God beside me? yea, *there is* no God; I know not *any*.”

Below, Jesus is saying
there is only ONE,
who is good,
→ God. Mark 10:18

“18 And Jesus said unto him, Why callest thou me good? *there is* none good but one, *that is*, God.”

A scribe asked Jesus,
"Which is the first commandment of all?"

The First part of **Jesus' answer was**
"Hear, O Israel;
The Lord our God is one Lord"

The **scribe's reply** to this part of Jesus' answer

"And the scribe said unto him, Well, Master,
thou hast said the truth:
for there is one God;
and there is none other but he"

What did **Jesus reply** to the scribe?
"when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly,
he said unto him,
Thou art not far from the kingdom of God"

Now read all the verses for the context,
noting the following words:

"for there is one God;
and there is none other but he" Mark 12:28–34

"28 ¶ And one of the scribes came, and having heard them reasoning together, and perceiving that he had answered them well, asked him, Which is the first commandment of all?
29 And Jesus answered him, The first of all the commandments *is*, Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord:
30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment.
31 And the second *is* like, *namely* this, Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself. There is none other commandment greater than these.
32 And the scribe said unto him, Well, Master, thou hast said the truth: for there is one God; and there is none other but he:
33 And to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love *his* neighbor as himself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices.

34 And when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, Thou art not far from the kingdom of God. And no man after that durst ask him *any question*."

Open your concordance, or use your computer, and search for the term, **"Holy One"**; it is used repeatedly in the Bible as a reference to God. Then, search for the term, **"Holy Three"**; it is not in the Bible, anywhere.

I believe some churches/people are out of Biblical context, because they do not prayerfully consider all the Bible verses on equal ground.

They tend to pick Bible verses which appear to support their chosen beliefs, and just focus on those verses.

Due to the number of Bible verses on the subject, we know both ways co-exist as truth. If we choose one side and ignore the other, we are choosing to close our eyes to part of the Bible, and our mental portrayal of God will be unbalanced. I believe that somehow the one lone Deity being, the one lone God, is Father, Son, and Holy Ghost /Spirit, simultaneously with interactions.

The words **"god"** and **"deity being"** are synonymous; they are interchangeable.

"Three deity beings" translates **"three gods"**

"Three Deity beings in unity"
translates
"thee Gods in unity"

"One God" translates **"One Deity being."**

Why is it so hard for us to understand the things about the Godhead?

Our reasoning about God is greatly affected by the way human beings learn and reason. Our knowledge is remembering our experiences. We remember what we have seen, heard, smelled, touched, tasted, and we apply this knowledge to the things we are learning. We cannot envision/imagine anything that is totally outside our experiences. When the things of God get totally outside our experiences, we cannot properly comprehend them.

Example: We know the color green, because we have seen it, and we recorded this color in our memory. If we never saw green, we would not be able to envision /imagine it. We cannot describe green to a person who never saw any light or color.

Likewise: We have a hard time envisioning/imagining how the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, can be the one lone Deity being *(God)*, because we have never seen or experienced an individual who can present himself in multiple manifestations/forms simultaneously with interactions.

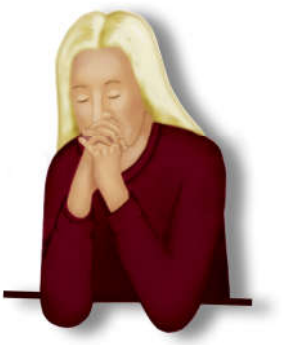
I believe one being three
(the one lone God/Deity, being Father, Son, and Holy Ghost)
fits the Bible.

I believe the opposite, three being one in purpose
(a team of three separate Deity/God beings working in unity)
fits human understanding.

When discussing the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit being one God, I find there are many terminology problems between churches. Different churches and people use the same coined words and phrases to express different understandings, causing some churches to misunderstand other churches' beliefs.

Talking about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, as persons in unity is selecting a word which tends to parallel God to the world of human beings *(three human beings)*. If we use the word persons when talking about God, our minds tend to place human traits and limitations on God.

God cannot be paralleled to a human being, thus: God cannot be paralleled to one person; he cannot be paralleled to three persons; he cannot be paralleled to persons in unity. God is one God; he is not a person or persons *(words which mentally portray humans) (However, the word "person" may be used correctly when talking about the human side of Jesus Christ).*



I believe the word, "persons," is an extremely poor choice of words.

To avoid mentally paralleling God to human beings, I use the word, "manifestations," instead of the word "persons."

The word "persons" unintentionally causes people to incorrectly visualize God with some of mankind's limitations.

"Three manifestations of God."

Manifestations – Forms in which God presents himself to, and communicates with, mankind.

The word "unity" portrays separate individuals working together. The Bible teaches that the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit are one God, not three Gods in unity.

I believe we can acquire an understanding about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit being only one God, but I do not believe anyone has a complete comprehensive understanding of how all the Biblical statements about God *(the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit)* fit together, including me. I believe a complete comprehensive understanding of the Godhead is past human ability. I believe human explanations of the one God can be basically correct, yet fall short of a FULL COMPREHENSIVE understanding. However, I do not believe that one person's understanding of the Godhead is as good as another, because I believe that some people's understandings are contrary to the Bible.

The human mind says it has to be one way or the other *(only one, or three)*, yet the Bible talks as both ways are truth together. Our human minds are limited; this limitation blocks us from understanding how everything fits together. Portraying God to parallel the world of human beings happens naturally, and it is a major problem in understanding the Godhead.

Due to the number of Bible verses we have for both ways, I believe both ways are Biblically confirmed as truth. Somehow the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, with interactions, is the one lone Deity being: God.

My intent is to show you more pieces about the Godhead to broaden your understanding, mainly the strong repeated declaration that there is only one Deity being *(only one God – He)*. Somehow the one lone God *(He)* can function as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost /Spirit, simultaneously with interactions.

I believe it is a case of one God *(He)* branching out as three *(the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit)*. We might liken this to one tree with three branches. We could point to any of the branches, and say it is the tree. I believe we can point to the Father, or the Son, or the Holy Spirit, and say he is the one and only God. Saying "There is only one who is God," is not leaving the Father, or the Son, or the Holy Spirit out of the picture, because I believe they are three branches of the one and only God/Deity.

Humans cannot completely understand God, however, God lets us understand some things about him.

The Bible declaring there is only one God
(one Deity being) is one of the top declarations of the Bible.

The declaration that there is only one who is God is not found in two or three verses; rather, it is declared repeatedly, in the Old and New Testaments.

A human body is Biblically called a temple. The Spirit of God dwells inside the body of Jesus Christ. *(This does not affect God being omnipresent.)*

"he spake of the temple of his body" John 2:19–21

"19 Jesus answered and said unto them, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.
20 Then said the Jews, Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?
21 But he spake of the temple of his body."

(The Spirit of God dwells inside all genuine Christians.)

**"for he dwelleth with you,
and shall be in you"** John 14:17

"17 *Even* the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you."

I believe the God of Abraham, who is a Spirit, dwells inside the body *(temple)* of his Son Jesus Christ without measure. Jesus Christ is the Father in/inside his Son, inseparable *(the Father constantly living inside his Son, without measure, makes Jesus Christ God)*. Just as God talked to Moses from the burning bush, the God of Abraham talked to the people through the mouth of his Son. When we talk to Jesus Christ, we are talking to the Father and the Son; the one and only God. When we say Jesus Christ is God, we are declaring he is Almighty God himself *(dwelling inside his Son)*, the one who talked to Noah, Abraham and Moses. Jesus Christ is Almighty God, because Almighty God dwells in/inside his Son without measure. Compare this to God in the burning bush.

I believe the Holy Ghost/Spirit is simply God's own Spirit, not an additional Deity being.

When I connect the Scriptures, I find the Father dwells in/inside his Son, and we find the Son is full of the Holy Ghost /Spirit. We find all the fullness of the Godhead dwells inside Jesus Christ "bodily". When we have Jesus Christ, we have Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit *(The Father and Holy Ghost /Spirit dwelling inside his Son)*. I believe this means Jesus Christ is the complete lone God of Abraham.

"in him dwelleth all
the fulness of the Godhead
bodily"

"ye are complete in him" (Jesus Christ)
"the head of all principality and power" Colossians 2:9–10

"9 For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.
10 And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power:"

(The Father lives/dwells inside of Christ)
"the Father that dwelleth in me" John 14:10

"10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works."

God *(the God of Abraham)* was inside the body of Christ.

"To wit, that God was in Christ" 2 Corinthians 5:19

"19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation."

"Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost" Luke 4:1

"1 ¶ And Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost returned from Jordan, and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness,"

Almighty God dwelling inside Jesus Christ without measure, makes him Almighty God in the flesh.

"God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*" John 3:34

"34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*."

Thomas recognized Jesus Christ was both his Lord and Almighty God himself.

"My Lord and my God" John 20:28

"28 And Thomas answered and said unto him, My Lord and my God."

When we have Jesus Christ, we have All of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Jesus Christ is called:

"The mighty God"

"The everlasting Father" Isaiah 9:6

"6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counselor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace."

The invisible God of Abraham made himself visible in the flesh, in the Son of man *(Jesus Christ)*. Angels could now see Almighty God.

"God was manifest in the flesh"

"seen of angels" 1 Timothy 3:16

"16 And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory."

Jesus Christ is the Father inside his Son.

The Father became visible with the body of Jesus Christ.

“he that hath seen me hath seen the Father”

“from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him” (the Father)

(I believe “in” means “inside” [remember, God is a Spirit])

“Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me?”

“the Father that dwelleth in me” John 14:6–11

“6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.
7 If ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also: and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him.
8 Philip saith unto him, Lord, shew us the Father, and it sufficeth us.
9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou *then*, Shew us the Father?
10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.
11 Believe me that I *am* in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very works’ sake.”

“he that seeth me seeth him that sent me” John 12:44–45

“44 ¶ Jesus cried and said, He that believeth on me, believeth not on me, but on him that sent me.
45 And he that seeth me seeth him that sent me.”

We can portray three Gods in the things we say.

“**God** the Father, **God** the Son,
and **God** the Holy Ghost”,
sounds like a list of three Gods.

Let us make ourselves understood
by saying the following:

“God **as** the Father, God **as** the Son,
and God **as** the Holy Ghost/Spirit”.

Jesus Christ spoke the words of God.

I believe Jesus Christ is the Father dwelling in/inside the Son of man. Just as the Father talked to Moses from the midst of the burning bush, God talked and ministered to the people from within his Son. Sometimes Jesus Christ acts and speaks as the Father, and sometimes he acts and speaks as the Son of man. Jesus Christ spoke God's words.

"as the Father said unto me, so I speak" John 12:49–50

"49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak.
50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak."

"For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God" John 3:34

"34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*."

"the Father that dwelleth in me" John 14:10

"10 Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works."

Question: If the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are one and the same God/Deity being, why do we find the following in the Bible: the Son praying to the Father; two wills; etc.?

Answer: Humans cannot totally understand these things. Jesus Christ is Almighty God himself, and mankind *(the Son of man)*, together. As a man/human/flesh Jesus Christ was subject to obey the things of God. Since humans are instructed to pray, he as the Son of man prayed. The Son of man prayed to God, who was inside him, in heaven, and everywhere else. He also prayed to set an example for us.

Jesus Christ had two wills inside him, because he was both Almighty God and mankind. As mankind, he wanted to avoid dying. As God, he wanted to save our souls. As the Son of man, Jesus Christ submitted himself to the will of God, giving us an excellent example of submission to God. *(See Luke 22:42)*

I believe Jesus Christ is a double/dual being: the Almighty God of Abraham in/inside the human body of his Son.

Jesus Christ is God and a man. His mother Mary was mankind *(flesh)*; his Father is God *(Spirit)*. He had the body of mankind, so he could shed his blood for us at Calvary. Jesus Christ's flesh and blood makes him a man, and the Spirit of God *(God himself)* dwelling inside him without measure makes him God. Jesus Christ is the Father *(Spirit)* and the Son of man *(flesh)* together.



Illustration: We could say the following: **(1)** I am holding the jar; **(2)** I am holding the honey; or **(3)** I am holding only one item *(the jar of honey)*. We could say "He who holds the jar holds the honey also". All of these statements would be correct.

Likewise: The Father dwells inside his Son. Jesus Christ is full of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Since the Father and the Holy Ghost/Spirit are inside Jesus Christ, when we are holding Jesus Christ *(the Son of Man)*, we are holding the Father and the Holy Ghost/Spirit too.

Jesus Christ — A dual being

As the Son of man	**As Almighty God**
• He hungered	• He fed the multitudes.
• He prayed to God.	• He healed the sick.
• He wept.	• He raised the dead.
• He wearied from walking	• He calmed the sea

"for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*" John 3:34

"34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure *unto him*."

Since all of God, not a measure of God, continually dwells inside the body of Jesus Christ, Jesus Christ is Almighty God in the flesh.

"the Father *is* in me,
and I in him" John 10:38

"38 But if I do, though ye believe not me, believe the works: that ye may know, and believe, that the Father *is* in me, and I in him."

God is omnipresent. God being totally inside Jesus Christ *(the Son of man)* does not hinder him from being everywhere else too. God is a Spirit who is always in every speck of existence. He is transparent. He is unimaginably large; everything that exists, including all outer space, exists inside him. His size allows him to be in the United States and China at the same time. We exist, live, and move, inside God.

The words "God" and "Deity" have the same meaning. The word "God" is often used as a descriptive name for the one and only God of Abraham. The word "Deity" is often used to state the rank/office/power of someone: declaring someone is a god.

When we say Jesus Christ is God, is the word "God" declaring WHO he is: the one lone God of Abraham? Or is the word "God" declaring WHAT he is: someone who holds the rank of Deity? Once we have someone else who is Deity in addition to Almighty God himself, we have two Gods *(two separate beings who are Deity)*. Two Gods is contrary to the Bible. The one lone God *(not person)* manifests himself as the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.



Pronoun usage for God

Almost every pronoun in the Bible that refers to God is singular: him, I, me, he, etc. Out of the multitude of pronouns for God, we do find a few plural pronouns, or a number of singular pronouns in the same verse which seem to indicate more than one. I believe the plural pronouns are concerning the multiple manifestations of God: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

I will use a tree with three main branches and explain in a simple way how the one and only God can be referred to with plural pronouns. I believe the exact explanation is deeper and more complex. However, I believe this simple explanation will satisfy our needs.

- We can talk about each branch of the tree individually.
- We can talk about two or three branches.
- We can talk about the whole tree.

The right branch, it is full of leaves. - - - **Singular pronoun**
The branches, they are full of leaves. - - - **Plural pronoun**
The whole tree, it is full of leaves. - - - **Singular pronoun**

All these singular and plural pronouns are referring to one tree. *Likewise:* Both singular and plural pronouns may be used correctly when talking about God. Plural pronouns are appropriate when we refer to the manifestations of God. Singular pronouns are appropriate when we talk about the one and only God/Deity being.



We do not have three separate Deity individuals who have joined themselves in unity *(a team, a union)*. We have one God who branches out as three.

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are in perfect harmony, because they are three manifestations of the one and only God/Deity being.

Let us look at an example of intermixed pronouns.
(Plural and Singular pronouns are used interchangeably.)

Verse 26 uses PLURAL pronouns.

Then Verse 27 converts them to SINGULAR pronouns.

"in our image" becomes **"in his *own* image".**

"Let us make" becomes creation by HE: **"created he".**

Genesis 1:26–27

"26 ¶ And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. 27 So God created man in his *own* image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them."

Creation (in Genesis 1:2)

- **"the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."**
- We find God creating.
- We find credit for creation being given to Jesus Christ.

Yet the Bible says HE rested from HIS work *(singular)*.

If the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit,
are three separate individual Deity beings,
the Bible should say **they** rested from **their** work *(plural)*.

"he rested" "from all his work"

"which he had made" (creation in singular pronouns) Genesis 2:2

"2 And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made."

"alone" "by myself" (creation in singular pronouns)

**"I *am* the LORD that maketh all *things*;
that stretcheth forth the heavens alone;
that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself"** Isaiah 44:24

"24 Thus saith the LORD, thy redeemer, and he that formed thee from the womb, I *am* the LORD that maketh all *things*; that stretcheth forth the heavens alone; that spreadeth abroad the earth by myself;"

When we study the oneness of God, we need to be aware of the word **"and"** *(Strong's #2532)*. When I study the Greek word from which it was translated, my understanding is it is not always an accumulative conjunction; it does not always mean plus.

My understanding is the Greek word which is sometimes translated **"and"** is a conjunction with little meaning, and it can be translated into many conjunctions which do not imply more than a total of one.

If we have a Biblical belief which hinges on the word "and", we may need to question if it is an accumulative conjunction, or just a conjunction which connects words and statements. The Bible uses the word "and" frequently when talking about the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit. My understanding of the following phrase *(in Greek)*, "The Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost/Spirit", could mean that the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit are one and the same, or it could mean that they are three separate beings. I am not a scholar of the Greek language; check things out for yourself. *(We are in the New Testament when we are studying Greek words.)*

The following verses will make it obvious the word "and" is not always an accumulative conjunction; it does not always mean plus. The following verses could be read as God and the Father are two separate individuals, by reading the word "and" as an accumulative conjunction.

"God and the Father" James 1:27

"27 Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, *and* to keep himself unspotted from the world."

"I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and *to* my God, and your God" John 20:17

"17 Jesus saith unto her, Touch me not; for I am not yet ascended to my Father: but go to my brethren, and say unto them, I ascend unto my Father, and your Father; and *to* my God, and your God."

“God and our Father” Philippians 4:20

“20 ¶ Now unto God and our Father *be* glory for ever and ever. Amen.”

We need to be careful when studying the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit. We need to know when the word “and” means plus *(an accumulative conjunction)*, and when it does not.

The Bible declares there is only one God. I do not find the Bible talking about three separate Deity individuals/Gods who are working as a team. I believe there is one lone God /Deity who reaches/branches out to mankind as the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

God gives a deeper understanding to the people who are filled with his Spirit. He gives a deeper understanding about himself to people who love him from the bottom of their heart. If we want a deeper understanding about God, we must strive to obey him, and strive to love him with all our heart, soul, mind, and strength. God reveals/shows /manifests himself to the people who truly love him:

“he it is that loveth me”

“I will love him, and will manifest myself to him” John 14:21

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

I find terminology to be an enormous problem when people are discussing the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit. Words and phrases mean different things to different people, thus many times we are not fully understanding what someone is attempting to explain. We use human words and reasoning, attempting to describe Godly things, but our human words and reasoning are often inadequate.

Human beings live in a box of limitations upon limitations. God has no limitations. Humans have limited understanding; God has complete understanding. In our efforts to understand God, we end up molding our portrayal of God to fit inside what human beings can understand, but God does not fit inside the limited understanding of mankind.

“For now we see through a glass, darkly” 1 Corinthians 13:12

“12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known.”

Keep it in its proper place. We need to remember the Bible strongly and repeatedly declares there is only one who is God, and he is alone in the area of Deity. This is one of the top declarations of the Bible. This should be in the forefront of our thinking as we study God in the Bible, and we need to be very careful not to reduce this declaration down to a mental footnote.

We do not have to comprehend everything about the Godhead. All we need to do is understand the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit, are the one lone God of Abraham, and the Father dwells inside his Son *(the Son of man)*. Jesus Christ is God’s Son, and God himself, together in the body of Jesus Christ. We do not have to understand all the how’s and why’s.

There is only one God. We are not omitting the Father and Holy Ghost/Spirit when we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”. Baptizing in the name of Jesus Christ is following Biblical consistency. When we have Jesus Christ, we have the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Totally Visualizing God is Past human ability. No matter how complete we can visualize God, there is always more. No human being can completely accurately describe/visualize God. There are so many things about God that are far past mankind's ability to comprehend/visualize. Mankind only comprehends a tiny bit about God. When we try to explain the tiny bit we think we understand about God, we end up bringing the visualization down to an effort to parallel God to something in mankind's world. If we take the attempted parallel too literally, we can misunderstand *(incorrectly visualize God)*, because the attempted effort is only an effort to help explain something that is past mankind's ability to completely comprehend.

I found that when I try to put Biblical information together to form a visualization of God, I usually find a Bible verse that appears to shoot a hole through my visualization.

I have come to believe that God does not allow mankind see a complete visualization of God until the hereafter. We find pieces of Biblical information that give us a partial visualization/comprehension of God, but not a total complete visualization.

I believe when we try to visualize God, we tend to visualize God too much like mankind: we tend to visualize a face, arms, legs, being at one place, etc. I believe we should visualize God as "The invisible Force", who is not inanimate, but alive with feelings and emotions. I believe he is shapeless, unless he decides to take on a shape *(example: the burning bush)*. I believe a better mental picture /visualization would be to visualize God as the wind, being invisible, yet being able to feel him, and see his power in action. He is "The one and only Living Almighty Force. He is the invisible Force who absolutely knows all things, and who absolutely controls all things at all times. God is the force that keeps all of outer space moving, keeps our hearts beating, makes the plants grow, etc., etc. There is no life, no energy, etc., which does not come from God. I believe we need to see God as the complete *(total)* force, who is a living being. The living force, who is in and throughout everything.

If the things we see were created by a big bang; then, God was the living Force that created the big bang, and he controlled where all the pieces went. The Force *(God)* is always everywhere at all times. God oversees everything everywhere, including the Spiritual world.



I believe human beings are incapable of visualizing the magnitude of God. Not only does God know the exact number of pieces of sand in the Sahara desert, he also knows the exact number of atoms that make up all that sand, and he is personally acquainted with every atom here and throughout all of outer space, and all atoms and elements everywhere obey him at all times. God *(the living Force)* is so big that everything, including all of outer space, exists inside of him. And at the same time, he *(the living Force)* is so small and penetrating that he *(the living Force)* exists inside everything down to the absolute smallest bit. All life, including all people, animals, plants, etc., exists inside of God *(inside the living Force)*. We live and move inside of God *(inside the living Force)*. God *(the living Force)* has made everything, and he is inside, and is in complete control, of everything. God even knows our thoughts and the intents of our hearts. He even knows what we are going to do and say tomorrow.

We need to remember, and keep in mind, that
only ONE God exists,
and HE is the one and only God;
HE is Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

J

The thief on the cross was not baptized.

Some people believe baptism is not necessary, because the thief on the cross went to Heaven without being baptized. Sometimes the event of the thief on the cross is wrongfully used as an excuse to ignore Christ's command to be baptized.

Two reasons why we do not parallel the thief on the cross

(1) When the event of the thief on the cross took place, Jesus Christ was still alive; he still had his blood. This tells us the event of the thief on the cross took place under the Dispensation of the Law. The Dispensation of the Law ended *(was fulfilled)* with the shed blood/death of Jesus Christ. If the event of the thief on the cross took place during the Dispensation of the Law, and we live in the Dispensation of Grace, is it correct to parallel ourselves to the thief on the cross? Christian baptism is a Dispensation of Grace ceremony, even though baptism started before the Dispensation of the Law ended.

(2) It was totally impossible for the thief to be baptized; he was not declining, dismissing, ignoring, or putting off baptism.

Jesus Christ paid the total price for our salvation when he died on the cross. There is absolutely nothing we need to do to earn, or help earn, our salvation. Jesus Christ paid for our salvation**,** but this **does not eliminate our need** to be **baptized into,** *(to put on, to join, to enter)* Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins!

> **(1)** Jesus Christ totally paying for our sins,
> **(2)** Joining our self to Christ by being baptized,
> are two different things.

Baptism is not about earning, baptism is our ceremony for attaching our self to Jesus Christ, including accepting Christ as our lord *(as the one we will follow and obey);* We will continually strive to obey Christ, in all things.

I do not know of anyone who gets baptized for the purpose of earning. Do you know anyone who did?

When we are interacting with Almighty God, we need to do everything from the depth of our heart. With the baptism ceremony, we need to be honestly giving our self to *(entering, joining, putting on)* Jesus Christ from the depth of our heart and mind; baptism is more than going through the motions, and saying the correct words.

There is more to putting-on/giving/joining ourselves to Jesus Christ than water baptism. Belief, repentance, and water baptism, is the starting point *(the entrance)* of following Jesus Christ.

Question: "What about the person who is in intensive care, on a respirator, and genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ on his last breath? Do you mean he will go to hell, because he was not properly baptized?"

Answer: I do not believe the Bible answers this question. God is the judge, and he is good and merciful. But to say what God's judgment is going to be in this, or any, situation is probably our opinion. I believe if someone genuinely gives himself to Jesus Christ, God will provide a way for him to do whatever God requires. My studies and experiences tell me God will not abandon anyone who genuinely loves God and has a right heart for God.

Jesus commanded that believers are to be baptized, so why do some people preach that baptism is not necessary?

This preaching may have evolved from something like the following:

Illustration: A woman's thirty year old son died raping a seven year old girl. He was an evil man all his life, never said a good word, never entered a church, laughed at the things of God, and cursed everyone and everything. At the funeral his mother said she knew her son was in Heaven, because she had him baptized as an infant. Hearing this statement, the preacher started preaching that the baptism ceremony does not save us; we need to accept Jesus Christ as our personal Lord *(as the one we will obey)* from the depth of our heart. Next, I believe **human reasoning said**, "If the baptism ceremony does not help save us, it is not necessary", and I believe people were led astray.

In the Great Commission, Jesus Christ commands
that the believers are to be baptized.
Are we going to obey him**?**,

Declining/refusing to obey Jesus Christ is actually declining/refusing to treat him as God.

No one has the authority to
take any commandment of Jesus Christ
and declare it unnecessary or unessential
(such as baptism).

Water Baptism is the will of God.
We can choose to do his will,
or we can choose to ignore him.

Our choice reveals if our heart is given to God.

It is not wise to say "No" to God.

Luke 6:46

**"46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord,
and do not the things which I say?"**

Why would someone say that he has faith in Jesus Christ, while he is declining/refusing to obey Jesus Christ *(baptism)*?

Willfully declining/refusing to obey God is refusing to treat God, as God.

**May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.**

K

1 Corinthians 1:17

Christ did not send Paul
for the purpose of doing the baptizing.

(I have heard 1 Corinthians 1:17 being used in an attempt to reduce the great importance of water baptism.)

"17 ¶ For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of none effect."

I have heard the above Bible verse being interpreted as preaching was the greater, and baptism was the lesser. But preaching and baptizing are welded together; they are an inseparable pair.

One purpose of preaching the gospel is to get people baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of their sins. Water baptism is our ceremony for putting on, joining, converting to, Jesus Christ *(further than infant sprinkling)*. However, putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ actually involves more than water baptism.

In the Great Commission, Jesus Christ commands his Church to preach the gospel to the whole world, to baptize the people who believe, and to teach the believers to observe/obey Christ's commandments. St. Paul did all three.

My understanding of: 1 Corinthians 1:17

Divisions were starting to form in the church at Corinth. Instead of everybody saying they were of Jesus Christ, some of them started to say they were of their preacher, naming him.

Since their division problem quickly becomes the subject of baptism, I conclude baptism was a major factor of the divisions. I believe some people were saying they were of the preacher who baptized them.

Baptism is an action of putting-on/joining/converting. Paul reminded them they were baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ", not in the name of the preacher. In other words, they converted themselves to Christ, not to the preacher.

Paul was glad he was not involved in their division problems any more than he was, due to the few baptisms he performed. Christ sent Paul to preach the gospel. He did not send him for the purpose of personally doing the baptizing. If Paul's actions of performing baptisms were aiding the divisions at Corinth, Paul preferred to let somebody else do the baptizing.

Every genuine Christian is called to do a particular function in the work of Jesus Christ. Paul's calling was to preach the gospel; he was not called to be the baptizer. But when people needed to be baptized, he baptized them.

"and *that* there be no divisions among you" 1 Corinthians 1:10–17

"10 ¶ Now I beseech you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all speak the same thing, and *that* there be no divisions among you; but *that* ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment.
11 For it hath been declared unto me of you, my brethren, by them *which are of the house* of Chloe, that there are contentions among you.
12 Now this I say, that every one of you saith, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ.
13 Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?
14 ¶ I thank God that I baptized none of you, but Crispus and Gaius;
15 Lest any should say that I had baptized in mine own name.
16 And I baptized also the household of Stephanas: besides, I know not whether I baptized any other.
17 ¶ For Christ sent me not to baptize, but to preach the gospel: not with wisdom of words, lest the cross of Christ should be made of none effect."

Baptism is a putting-on/joining/converting ceremony. Baptizing people in the name of "Paul" would be converting people to St. Paul.

"were ye baptized in the name of Paul?" 1 Corinthians 1:13

"13 Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?"

“but ministers by whom ye believed” 1 Corinthians 3:4–5

“4 For while one saith, I am of Paul; and another, I *am* of Apollos; are ye not carnal?
5 ¶ Who then is Paul, and who *is* Apollos, but ministers by whom ye believed, even as the Lord gave to every man?”

Paul’s teaching on baptism

What did Paul teach about baptism? Romans 6:3–5

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?
4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.
5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also *in the likeness* of *his* resurrection:”

Paul taught about being baptized <u>into</u> Christ. Galatians 3:27

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”

Paul taught about being buried with Christ in baptism. Colossians 2:12

“12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with *him* through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.”

What did Paul do concerning baptism?

Paul *(Saul)* was baptized. Acts 9:17–18

“17 And Ananias went his way, and entered into the house; and putting his hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, *even* Jesus, that appeared unto thee in the way as thou camest, hath sent me, that thou mightest receive thy sight, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.
18 And immediately there fell from his eyes as it had been scales: and he received sight forthwith, and arose, and was baptized.”

Paul and Silas baptized the Jailor and his family in the middle of the night, right after the earthquake; they did not even wait until morning. This shows us they believed baptism was very important. Acts 16:32–33

"32 And they spake unto him the word of the Lord, and to all that were in his house.
33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed *their* stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway."

Paul re-baptized people who were previously baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism. If baptism is not important, why would Paul be asking them about their baptism Acts 19:3–5

"3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.
4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.
5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus."

Paul baptized Acts 16:14–15

"14 And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple, of the city of Thyatira, which worshipped God, heard *us*: whose heart the Lord opened, that she attended unto the things which were spoken of Paul.
15 And when she was baptized, and her household, she besought *us*, saying, If ye have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come into my house, and abide *there*. And she constrained us."

Paul baptized Acts 18:8

"8 And Crispus, the chief ruler of the synagogue, believed on the Lord with all his house; and many of the Corinthians hearing believed, and were baptized."



Water baptism is a directive from Christ.

“baptizing them” Matthew 28:19–20

“19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:
20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, *even* unto the end of the world. Amen.”

“He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved” Mark 16:16

“16 He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned.”

In 1 Corinthians 1:17, St. Paul was not expressing that baptism was less important than preaching. Baptism and preaching are welded together. Preaching the gospel results with people being baptized into Jesus Christ.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

III

Spiritual baptism Being born again
Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit

Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit is our personal burning bush encounter with God.

The Bible tells us, if we do not have the Spirit of God dwelling inside of us, we do not belong to Jesus Christ yet.

I use the words “Holy Ghost/Spirit”, because some of us say, “Holy Ghost”, and other people say, “Holy Spirit”, so I often use the words “Holy Ghost/Spirit”, attempting to cover both ways, but in this chapter I am also going to use the phrase, "Spirit of God".

When I am talking about the Spirit of God *(the Holy Ghost/Spirit)* dwelling inside of us, I am talking about the living being, “Almighty God”, dwelling inside of us.

When he, as the Spirit of God *(God is a Spirit)*, is genuinely dwelling inside of us, we will grow into the spirit *(lowercase s)* of God: growing into to the traits/mindset of God, like: loving/caring, Godly righteousness, forgiving, etc.

I found that when I am talking about the Spirit of God, speaking in tongues, etc., I am often talking to people who do not begin to understand what I am telling them. Explaining, the things about the Spirit of God to them, is often like trying to explain green to a person who never saw any light or color.

In order for someone to comprehend "green", they need to see green. In order for someone to comprehend many of the things of the Spirit of God, they need to have experienced the things of the Spirit of God, for many of the things concerning the Spirit of God are past their human ability to imagine them.

Just as we had to see green, in order to know what green is, we need to experience the Spirit of God, to be able to truly understand many of the things concerning the Spirit of God. Until then, some of the things concerning the Spirit of God can appear fictitious/unbelievable.

People, who never experienced the Spirit of God, may not correctly understand many of the things in this chapter, and its sub-chapters, but read the chapters anyhow. Remembering these things can help you later on.

If we want to receive God, and start understanding the Spirit of God, we need to first have a genuine desire in our heart to love God. God notices our love for God, and will start leading us up the path of growing in our love for God. Because we truly love God, God will start opening our eyes, and we will start growing into understanding the things of God, as we prayerfully read the Bible daily.

Things to do if I want to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit

First, we need to have a desire in our heart to greatly love God; we need to draw our self closer and closer to God by genuinely loving him, by genuinely praising God to his face, etc. When God sees that WE want to love God with our ALL, God notices it, and will start leading us up the path of growing in our love for God. Our love for God will cause us to start reading the Bible daily; we will be striving to learn more about God. Because we truly love God, God will start opening our eyes *(start opening our understanding, including about Acts 2:38),* and we will start growing into understanding the things of God, as we prayerfully read the Bible every day.

"ye shall seek me, and find *me*,
when ye shall search for me
with all your heart" Jeremiah 29:13

"13 And ye shall seek me, and find *me*, when ye shall search for me with all your heart."

God knows everything; he knows who is going to be living in Heaven. God starts drawing people who LOVE God unto himself. He might cause us to go to a church, or read in the Bible. He causes people to understand some of the things of God, and causes them to be convicted/stirred about the things they learned, causing them to desire to be a part

of the family of God. He leads them to repent, and to give themselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way; then, he fills them with his Holy Ghost/Spirit *(this is a point where we find God causing people in the Bible to speak in other tongues [other languages], this happened at the point of people receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*. At this point they also received power from God, and now God is continually living inside of them, helping and guiding them. With God living inside of them, they are a part of the family of God, ready to do their job *(their part)* in the continuing work of Jesus Christ.

The Church was launched/activated by God, on the Day of Pentecost *(Acts chapter 2)*, when the Holy Ghost/Spirit entered the genuine followers of Jesus Christ, to remain constantly inside of them, giving them power from God. The Church being launched/activated by God on this day, makes this day the first day of the Church. In the Bible, when the Holy Ghost/Spirit entered the genuine followers of Jesus Christ, God spoke through their mouths in foreign languages *(God knows all languages)*. God often chooses to do things in ways that do not make sense to human beings.

God fills every genuine believer/follower of Jesus Christ with the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Having the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of us is having Almighty God himself dwelling inside of us, leading, teaching, and guiding us into the ways of God. When people receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, they are changed into being a different type of person. Being filled with the Holy Ghost/Spirit causes a U-turn in a person's life.



A mean, foulmouthed, self-centered, sinner attends church. During the service the Spirit of God *(the Holy Ghost)* touches his heart and conscience, and he totally gives himself to Jesus Christ, obeying Acts 2:38. He walks out of

church being a changed man: being kind; full of love; considerate; soft spoken; etc. His wife and the people who know him say "He is not the same person. It is as if someone else is living inside his body." This is because he met God, and walked out of church with the Spirit of God *(God himself, the Spirit of Christ)* dwelling inside of him, molding him.

Most times the above things happen at a slower pace. A big change happens the moment we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, then we keep growing deeper and deeper into living righteously.

Everyone who genuinely receives the Holy Ghost/Spirit becomes a new/changed person.

"if any man *be* in Christ,
***he is* a new creature"** 2 Corinthians 5:17

"17 Therefore if any man *be* in Christ, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new."

Before the Day of Pentecost *(Acts chapter 2)* God spoke through the mouths of a few of God's people, and it was in their own language.

Many many years earlier, God spoke through his prophet Joel, declaring that a day was coming that instead of God's Spirit being upon a few of God's people, God's Spirit would start to be upon all of God's people.

"I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh"

"your sons and your daughters shall prophesy" Joel 2:28–29

"28 ¶ And it shall come to pass afterward, *that* I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:
29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit."

Then on the day of Pentecost, St. Peter proclaimed, concerning Jesus Christ's followers speaking in tongues, that God was fulfilling Joel's prophecy.

"But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel" (Speaking in tongues) Acts 2:16–18

"16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;
17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:
18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:"

Receiving the Spirit of God, speaking in tongues, etc. is not what we do; rather, it is what God does to us. If we want God to give us the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we need to put our faith in Jesus Christ, genuinely repent, and give our self to God the Bible way. We need to grow closer to God: by wholeheartedly loving God, by always striving to obey God, by drawing nigh unto God, and by prayerfully and Biblically learning and growing our self closer and closer to God, every day, continuously. And we are to ask God for the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

"ye shall seek me, and find *me*, when ye shall search for me with all your heart" Jeremiah 29:13

"13 And ye shall seek me, and find *me*, when ye shall search for me with all your heart."

The following interchangeable phrases are sometimes used to refer to the Holy Ghost/Spirit entering someone for full-time residence:

- Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit,
- Receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost/Spirit,
- Spiritual baptism,
- Receiving the Promise,
- Being Filled with the Holy Ghost/Spirit,
- Being baptized with the Holy Ghost/Spirit,
- Being born again,
- Being born of the Spirit,
- Being endued with power,
- Plus more.

We will learn that Jesus Christ is God's son, and God himself is dwelling inside of him. We will learn Jesus Christ paid the penalty for our sins when he died on the cross. We will learn we are to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ, and start following and striving to obey him, traveling up *(growing)* the way of righteousness *(when we join Jesus Christ to follow and obey him, we are accepting Jesus Christ as our Lord. A lord is someone in charge, someone to obey, someone who provides for us).* We put on *(join)* Jesus Christ for the remission of sins .

In the second chapter of Acts, on the first day of the Church, after St. Peter preached, people wanted to know how to join themselves to Jesus Christ. St. Peter, with the Apostles with him, told them how to join *(below)*.

"Men *and* brethren,
what shall we do?" Act 2:37–39

"37 ¶ Now when they heard *this,* they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?
38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

If we love God with our all, and we have joined our self to Jesus Christ the Bible way, and we have the Holy Ghost /Spirit dwelling inside of us, the Holy Ghost/Spirit will guide us up the way of Jesus Christ, as we pray and prayerfully read the Bible daily, and cooperate with God.

Moses went to see a burning bush, and he met God. This encounter with God changed the rest of his life.

Likewise: When we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we personally meet Almighty God. Meeting God takes us from believing there is a God, to knowing God. This encounter with God changes the rest of our life.

The Holy Ghost/Spirit is the center of all genuine Christianity.

The Bible tells us, if we do not have the Holy Ghost /Spirit *(the Spirit of Christ)* dwelling inside us, we do not belong to Christ yet.

The Spirit of God entering us, to constantly dwell inside us, is what completes us into a genuine Christian. The Holy Ghost/Spirit is how we communicate/connect with God.

"Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his"

"dwell in you" Romans 8:8–9

"8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.
9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."

"the Spirit of God" and **"the Spirit of Christ"** are one and the same.

"if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you" Romans 8:11

"11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you."

"The Spirit itself beareth witness" Romans 8:16

"16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:"

"as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God" Romans 8:14

"14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God."

Being born again *(being born of the Spirit)* refers to receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Without the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of us, we are largely blind concerning the things of God.

"cannot see" *(cannot perceive)* John 3:3

"3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."

God is in the salvage business.

God takes people whose lives are totally a mess/wreck, full of all kinds of sin, and he salvages/molds them into Godly people.

We may ask, "How can I get God to salvage me?" First we must believe Jesus Christ is the son of God, and totally accept him as our Lord *(as the one we will obey)*. We need to give ourselves to Jesus Christ *(obey Acts 2:38)*. We need to love God with all our heart, mind, strength, and soul. God is looking for people with a right heart. When the Holy Ghost/Spirit is dwelling inside us, God will mold us into Godly people as we cooperate with him.

If we obeyed Acts 2:38, and still do not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside us, usually the problem is we have not totally given ourselves to Jesus Christ *(100% from the depth of our heart)*. We might have something/someone standing between us and God; God is not first. We need to get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward God, and genuinely and intensively praise him from the depth of our heart; this gets God's attention. When we have God's attention, we need to pray for help in giving ourselves completely to him. We need to truly give up our way for God's way? The Bible tells us to ask God for the Holy Ghost/Spirit, and it also says God gives the Holy Ghost/Spirit to the people who obey Jesus Christ *(the people who honestly strive to obey him with a right heart)*.

We need the Holy Ghost/Spirit to separate us from sin.

Sin controls everyone who does not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of them. If we do not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we are in bondage/addicted/handcuffed to sin of some kind. Without the Holy Ghost/Spirit, sin is leading/controlling us. We do not have the power to break the chains of sin by ourselves. We may be able to stop doing a sin for a season, but without the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we will most likely fall back to doing it again. The only way to be freed from sin's handcuffs is to have the Holy Ghost /Spirit dwelling inside of us, and to continue following the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Some interchangeable names for the Spirit of God are:

Holy Ghost – Holy Spirit – Spirit of Christ – Spirit of the Lord
Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead
Spirit of Truth – The Promise – God – Spirit of God.
The Comforter – Christ in you – Spirit *(with a capital S)*

Illustration: A man was required to lift a two thousand pound object, and set it in place. He attempted to lift the object, but he could not budge it. Someone watching him said "You cannot lift it by yourself; you need to use the crane." So the man got the crane, and lifted the object into place.



Likewise: Just as the man was too weak to lift the object into place by himself, we are too weak to break away from the chains of sin by ourselves. Just as the man needed the crane to lift the object into place, we need the Holy Ghost/Spirit to break our addiction/handcuffs to sin. As we follow the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we are walking away from sin, growing upward in the way of righteousness. With the handcuffs of sin broken, we are free to choose to follow the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. We are free to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness.

When we receive the Holy Ghost *(the Spirit of God)*, there will be a big change in our lives. Our sinful life becomes past tense. We no longer live a life of hurting others, having immoral sex, stealing, lying, etc. However, we are not instantly perfect, but the Holy Ghost/Spirit will keep molding, grinding, polishing, and refining us deeper and deeper into righteousness, as we cooperate with God.

Christ sheds the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who is inside him, a part of him, upon all genuine Christians; thus we have the phrase "Christ in you". A genuine Christian is a Holy Ghost /Spirit filled person, a person with a perfect heart toward God, someone who always desires and strives to live righteously /Godly.

However, being human, we still blunder; we do not totally understand all the ways of God. But the Holy Ghost /Spirit will be continually teaching us the ways of God, and we will grow deeper into perfection as God leads us into Godly righteousness. The Holy Ghost/Spirit will be continually upgrading and comforting us the rest of our current lives.

"Being then made free from sin,
ye became the servants of righteousness" Romans 6:18

"18 Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness."

The word "baptism" means immersion/dip.
Spiritual baptism is being immersed into the Spirit of God.

Let us look in the Bible and see what we find about the Holy Ghost/Spirit

Below, Christ is talking to the Apostles, right before his ascension into Heaven.

"wait for the promise"
(The Promise is the promise of the Holy Ghost/Spirit) Acts 1:4–5

"4 And, being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, *saith he*, ye have heard of me.
5 For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence."

Nine days later, on the day of Pentecost

"they were all filled with the Holy Ghost,
and began to speak with other tongues,
as the Spirit gave them utterance" Acts 2:1–4

"1 ¶ And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.
2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.
3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.
4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance."

St. Peter started preaching shortly after the people received the Holy Ghost/Spirit. The following was part of his preaching:

"the promise of the Holy Ghost"
"which ye now see and hear"
(speaking in tongues) Acts 2:33



"33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear."

Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(the promise)* is for "as many as the Lord our God shall call"

Acts 2:38–39

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

Born of the Spirit

(Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit) John 3:5

"5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and *of* the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God."

"the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you" (the Holy Ghost/Spirit) John 14:15–17

"15 ¶ If ye love me, keep my commandments.
16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;
17 *Even* the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you."

"the Spirit of truth" (the Holy Ghost/Spirit)
"he will guide you into all truth" John 16:13

"13 Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come."

"the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Ghost"
"he shall teach you" John 14:26

"26 But the Comforter, *which is* the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you."

"*There is* therefore now no condemnation to them"
"who walk" (who follow the leading of the Spirit of God)
"after the Spirit" Romans 8:1

"1 ¶ *There is* therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit."

"God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts" Galatians 4:4–6

"4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,
5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.
6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father."

"the Spirit of God" and **"the Spirit of Christ"**
are one and the same.

"which is Christ in you" Colossians 1:27

"27 To whom God would make known what *is* the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory:"

Who is to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit?

"the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive" (believe on Christ) John 7:38–39

"38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.
39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet *given*; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)"

The promise is the Holy Ghost/Spirit

"the promise is unto you, and to"
"*even* as many as the Lord our God shall call" Acts 2:39

"39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

Did we ASK God for the Holy Ghost/Spirit?

"to them that ask him" Luke 11:13

"13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?"

Do we OBEY God?

"the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him" Acts 5:32

"32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him."

All genuine Christians have the Spirit of God dwelling inside them. The Bible plainly declares if we do not have the Spirit of God dwelling inside us, we do not belong to Jesus Christ yet.

Speaking in tongues occurred when the people in the New Testament received God's Spirit *(when they were baptized with the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*. Speaking in tongues did not just happen on the day of Pentecost, it continued happening to other people as they received the Holy Ghost /Spirit. We do not find any Biblical evidence anyone received the Holy Ghost/Spirit without speaking in tongues.

It is Believed: Speaking in tongues happens naturally when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. This belief concludes, if we did not speak in tongues, we did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit yet. Speaking in tongues is seen as the first evidence of receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit. People base their belief on the Biblical events, what happened to them, and what they see happening in their church. It is believed the same thing happens to us, as happened to the people in the Bible, when we receive the Holy Ghost /Spirit.

In the Bible,
the moment the people received the Holy Ghost/Spirit could be witnessed by sight and sound.

“he hath shed forth this,
which ye now see and hear” Acts 2:33

“33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear.”

The Bible does not teach us to identify who has the Spirit of God dwelling inside them by the speaking in tongues. The Bible teaches us to identify who has the Spirit of God dwelling inside them by the genuine fruit of the Spirit in their life. The genuine fruit of the Spirit of God is always growing in a person who has the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside him, leading him.

The Bible does not command us to speak in tongues. In fact, we cannot speak in tongues; it is an action caused by God. Speaking in tongues is not what we do; it is what happens to us. Our part is to draw nigh to God, loving him with our all, and totally yielding ourselves to him.

If we want to speak in tongues, we keep drawing closer and closer to God, loving and praising him from the uttermost depth of our heart, until we have our burning bush encounter with God.

The main things which add strength to my belief about speaking in tongues is my own experience, and I witness changes for the good happening in people who are genuinely filled with the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who speak in tongues, and who wholeheartedly continue in the genuine ways of God. Seeing these changes taking place affects my belief about speaking in tongues.

Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit is like opening our eyes and finding ourselves in a brand-new world, a world where God is Spiritually tangible. Tangibly feeling God, and knowing beyond a shadow of a doubt it is genuine, is an awesome and pleasurable feeling. People who have genuinely spoken in tongues, genuinely danced in the Spirit, genuinely sang in the Spirit etc., should hold tight to these one on one experiences with God. Feeling God overwhelming us is an awesome feeling and experience. These one on one experiences greatly accelerate us in God.

Let us look at some Scriptures concerning the Spirit of God coming upon people.

In the Old Testament, when the Spirit of God came upon people, they often broke out speaking the words of the Lord *(prophesying)*.

"I have put my words in thy mouth" Jeremiah 1:9

"9 Then the LORD put forth his hand, and touched my mouth. And the LORD said unto me, Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth."

In the Old Testament, God's Spirit came upon a few of his people, to give guidance to all of his people.

Numbers 11:24–25

"24 ¶ And Moses went out, and told the people the words of the LORD, and gathered the seventy men of the elders of the people, and set them round about the tabernacle.
25 And the LORD came down in a cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that *was* upon him, and gave *it* unto the seventy elders: and it came to pass, *that*, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, and did not cease."

In the Old Testament the Spirit of God came upon a small percentage of God's people. Moses desired that all the Lord's people would have the Spirit of God upon them.

"all the LORD'S people" Numbers 11:29

"29 And Moses said unto him, Enviest thou for my sake? would God that all the LORD'S people were prophets, *and* that the LORD would put his spirit upon them!"

Then we find a prophecy in the book of Joel proclaiming God was going to pour out his Spirit upon all flesh on a future date *(the Promise)*. He was going to pour out his Spirit upon all his people: great and small; male and female; etc.



From the day of Pentecost, the Spirit of God is for everyone who truly believes on the Lord Jesus Christ.

"I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh" Joel 2:28–29

"28 ¶ And it shall come to pass afterward, *that* I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions:
29 And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit."

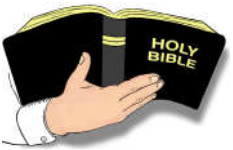
In the New Testament before Pentecost, we find God's Spirit continuing to come upon a few selected people, causing them to prophesy.

John the Baptist's father Luke 1:67

"67 ¶ And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Ghost, and prophesied, saying,"

John the Baptist proclaimed

Jesus Christ would baptize us with the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(immerse us into the Holy Ghost/Spirit, give us the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*



"he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost" Mark 1:6–8

6 And John was clothed with camel's hair, and with a girdle of a skin about his loins; and he did eat locusts and wild honey;
7 And preached, saying, There cometh one mightier than I after me, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to stoop down and unloose.
8 I indeed have baptized you with water: but he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost."

"the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost" John 1:29–34

"29 ¶ The next day John seeth Jesus coming unto him, and saith, Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world.
30 This is he of whom I said, After me cometh a man which is preferred before me: for he was before me.
31 And I knew him not: but that he should be made manifest to Israel, therefore am I come baptizing with water.

32 And John bare record, saying, I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it abode upon him.
33 And I knew him not: but he that sent me to baptize with water, the same said unto me, Upon whom thou shalt see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizeth with the Holy Ghost.
34 And I saw, and bare record that this is the Son of God."

"he shall give you another Comforter,
that he may abide with you for ever" John 14:15–17

"15 ¶ If ye love me, keep my commandments.
16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;
17 *Even* the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you."

Believers started to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, after Jesus was glorified *(after he ascended up into heaven).*

"the Holy Ghost was not yet *given*;
because that Jesus was not yet glorified" John 7:37–39

"37 ¶ In the last day, that great *day* of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink.
38 He that believeth on me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water.
39 (But this spake he of the Spirit, which they that believe on him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet *given*; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)"

"for if I go not away, the Comforter
will not come unto you" (the Holy Ghost/Spirit) John 16:7

"7 ¶ Nevertheless I tell you the truth; It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you."

After Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, the Apostles and the followers of Christ were to wait in Jerusalem until they received the Holy Ghost: the Promise.

“but wait for the promise of the Father” Acts 1:4–9

“4 And, being assembled together with *them*, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, *saith he*, ye have heard of me.
5 For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days hence.
6 ¶ When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?
7 And he said unto them, It is not for you to know the times or the seasons, which the Father hath put in his own power.
8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.
9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.”

Being endued with the Holy Ghost/Spirit Luke 24:49

“49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.”

About 120 people waited in Jerusalem to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, including Jesus' mother. Acts 1:13–15

“13 And when they were come in, they went up into an upper room, where abode both Peter, and James, and John, and Andrew, Philip, and Thomas, Bartholomew, and Matthew, James *the son* of Alphaeus, and Simon Zelotes, and Judas *the brother* of James.
14 These all continued with one accord in prayer and supplication, with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with his brethren.
15 ¶ And in those days Peter stood up in the midst of the disciples, and said, (the number of names together were about an hundred and twenty,)”

They waited in Jerusalem to receive the Holy Ghost /Spirit. When they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, all of them, not a percentage of them, spoke in other tongues *(other languages)*. Note the word **“all”**, in the next verse.

**“they were all filled with the Holy Ghost,
and began to speak with other tongues,
as the Spirit gave them utterance”** Acts 2:1–4

“1 ¶ And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.
2 And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.
3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.
4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”

**“how hear we every man
in our own tongue”** (in our own language) Acts 2:5–13

“5 ¶ And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.
6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.
7 And they were all amazed and marveled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?
8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?
9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,
10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,
11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.
12 And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, What meaneth this?
13 Others mocking said, These men are full of new wine.”

“I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh” Acts 2:14–21

“14 ¶ But Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and said unto them, Ye men of Judaea, and all *ye* that dwell at Jerusalem, be this known unto you, and hearken to my words:
15 For these are not drunken, as ye suppose, seeing it is *but* the third hour of the day.
16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;

17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:
18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:
19 And I will shew wonders in heaven above, and signs in the earth beneath; blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke:
20 The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before that great and notable day of the Lord come:
21 And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved."

We find four accounts in the Bible of people receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Observers could watch them receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, in all four accounts.

"he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear" Acts 2:33

"33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear."

The words **"pour"** and **"shed"** are translated from the same Greek word. They are used to show future tense, and past tense.

"I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh" *(in Acts 2:17)*

"he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear" *(above)*

After seeing the Christians speaking in tongues, and hearing St. Peter preach, observers were stirred in their hearts and were convicted. They asked St. Peter and the Apostles **"what shall we do?"**. Then St. Peter instructed them on how to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ.

The Promise is God's promise to give the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

"and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost" Acts 2:36–39

"36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.
37 ¶ Now when they heard *this*, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men *and* brethren, what shall we do?

38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

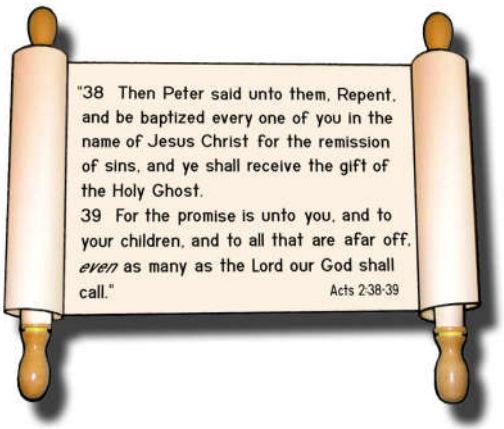


St. Peter continued preaching, and 3000 souls were baptized into Christ. Then they proceeded forward in the ways of God. Acts 2:40–42

"40 And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.
41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added *unto them* about three thousand souls.
42 ¶ And they continued stedfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers."

In the Bible we find four accounts of people receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit, to dwell in them 24/7 *(the Promise of the Father which was to be poured out upon all genuine believers, after Christ was glorified)*. Let us examine these four accounts.

The first account was on the day of Pentecost, and we have just gone over it. Onlookers saw and heard the recipients of the Holy Ghost/Spirit speaking in tongues, as the Spirit of God gave them utterance.



The account at Cornelius's House

Cornelius was a Gentile *(a person who was not of the Jewish race)*. Ordinarily God did not communicate or deal with Gentiles. In Acts chapter 10, we find God sending St. Peter to preach to the Gentiles at Cornelius's house. When St. Peter was preaching, ALL the Gentiles were filled with the Holy Ghost/Spirit and spoke in tongues.

"the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word"

How did they know these Gentiles received the Holy Ghost/Spirit?

"For they heard them speak with tongues"

The Holy Ghost/Spirit falling upon Gentiles, and speaking through them, seemed unorthodox to the Christian Jews *(Jews who had accepted Jesus Christ as the Messiah)*. In the past, God did not usually deal with Gentiles. Now they witnessed God pouring out his Spirit upon them, causing them to speak in tongues. When they saw the Gentiles speaking in tongues, they knew God had accepted the Gentiles as part of his family. St. Peter knew they needed to be baptized into Jesus Christ.

Observers could **HEAR** them receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

"For they heard them speak with tongues"

ALL of them spoke in tongues, not a percentage of them.

"the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word" Acts 10:43–48

"43 To him give all the prophets witness, that through his name whosoever believeth in him shall receive remission of sins.
44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.
45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.
46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,
47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?
48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days."

(Read the whole account: Acts 10:1 through Acts 11:18)

The account at Ephesus

Paul found some disciples of John the Baptist at Ephesus. He started asking them questions to see how far they had advanced in God.

"Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?"

When they told Paul they did not know anything about the Holy Ghost, Paul knew they had not advanced to that point. Then he stepped backward in his questioning and asked, **"Unto what then were ye baptized?"**

With this question, Paul found out they were not baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ"; they were only baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism.

John the Baptist was the forerunner of Christ. He was getting things ready for Jesus Christ to enter the scene. When Christ came onto the scene, the followers of John the Baptist were to convert and become followers of Jesus Christ. Baptism is the ceremony for converting to Jesus Christ. They converted to, put on, joined, Jesus Christ by being baptized **"in the name of the Lord Jesus"**.

After St. Paul re-baptized these individuals **"in the name of the Lord Jesus"**, he laid his hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost and spoke in tongues.

(Onlookers could have heard and seen the event, because)
"they spake with tongues, and prophesied" Acts 19:1–6

"1 ¶ And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples,

2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.

3 And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John's baptism.

4 Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.

5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.
6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied."

(They did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit
until they were baptized into Christ.)

The Samaria account

In Samaria we find people who were stirred and convicted by the Spirit of God. Being stirred and convicted, they believed on and were baptized into Jesus Christ. *(Verse 16 verifies they were baptized in the name of the* **"Lord Jesus"***).* Yet the Bible proclaims they did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit; receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit was a step further. At this point we have baptized believers who did not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

How did they know these baptized believers did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit? Was it because they did not see and hear them speaking in tongues, like the other recipients of the Holy Ghost/Spirit? They knew the Gentiles received the Holy Ghost/Spirit at Cornelius's house, **"For they heard them speak with tongues"** *(In Acts 10:46)*.

The Apostles sent Peter and John to Samaria. When they arrived they prayed for these baptized believers. They laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

This account does not say anything about speaking in tongues. The Bible declares Simon SAW them receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, and he wanted to have the power, so at the touch of his hands people would receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

If Simon merely observed Peter and John laying their hands on people in prayer, he would not have tried to buy this power. Simon already had the ability to lay his hands on people and pray for them.

Simon saw what happened when Peter and John laid their hands upon these people. What did Simon observe? It is reasonable to assume people receiving the Holy Ghost /Spirit would have similar experiences. In the other accounts we find observers could see and hear the people speaking in tongues. It is reasonable to conclude Simon saw the same.

"that they might receive the Holy Ghost"

"(For as yet he was fallen upon none of them" Acts 8:12–20

"12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.

13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done.

14 ¶ Now when the apostles which were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent unto them Peter and John:

15 Who, when they were come down, prayed for them, that they might receive the Holy Ghost:

16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)

17 Then laid they *their* hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost.

18 And when Simon saw that through laying on of the apostles' hands the Holy Ghost was given, he offered them money,

19 Saying, Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I lay hands, he may receive the Holy Ghost.

20 But Peter said unto him, Thy money perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money."



I might say, "I believe", but have I received the Holy Ghost/Spirit since or when I believed?

People in the Bible spoke in tongues when they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit. It is reasonable to believe we should have the same experience when we receive the Holy Ghost /Spirit.

Mind Authenticity: Genuine speaking in tongues is produced as the Spirit of God gives *(causes)* the utterance. If the Spirit of God is not giving the utterance, then it is not the speaking in tongues that is found in the Bible.

The notion that everyone receives the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(the Spirit of God)* instantly upon believing on the Lord Jesus Christ runs into Biblical problems. I cannot find any Biblical support for this belief.

We find some people who instantly upon believing on Jesus Christ received the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(Acts 10:43–46).*

We find baptized believers who did not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit. They received the Holy Ghost/Spirit on a later date. *(Acts 8:12–17)*

St. Paul asked people if they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit since they believed *(or when they believed)*. What reason would there be for even asking this question, unless some people did not instantly receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit when they believed?

"Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?" (since, or when, you believed) Acts 19:1–2

"1 ¶ And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples,

2 He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost."

All genuine Christians have the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside them.

"Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?" 1 Corinthians 3:16–17

"16 ¶ Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and *that* the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?
17 If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which *temple* ye are."

"know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost *which is* in you" 1 Corinthians 6:19–20

"19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost *which is* in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?
20 For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's."

"as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in *them*" 2 Corinthians 6:16

"16 And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in *them*; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people."

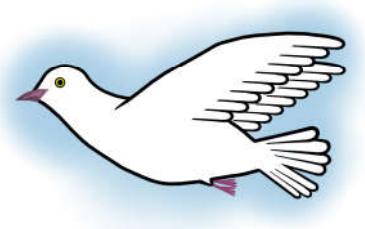
"the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us" 2 Timothy 1:14

"14 That good thing which was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us."

"hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us" 1 John 3:24

"24 And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us."

"God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts" Galatians 4:6



"6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father."

“If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us” 1 John 4:12–13

“12 No man hath seen God at any time. If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us.
13 Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit.”

“Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God”

“he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him” 1 John 4:15–16

“15 Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.
16 And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.”

All genuine Christians follow the leading of the Spirit of God. Romans 8:14

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

“Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his” Romans 8:8–9

“8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.
9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

“Except a man be born of water and *of* the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God”



“5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and *of* the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.”

How can we know who is following the leading of God's Spirit?



A person who is following the leading of God's Spirit continually grows deeper and deeper into the fruit of God's Spirit. Genuinely having the fruit of the Spirit in our life reveals we are following the leading of the Spirit of God. *(The fruit of the Spirit is all the good things the Spirit of God produces in a Christian.)*

People can see the fruit of the Spirit in a genuine Christian's life: the way he lives; what he does; what he says; etc. However, only a genuine Spirit filled Christian can accurately identify the genuine fruit of the Spirit of God. People who do not have the Spirit of God dwelling inside them can misidentify the genuine fruit of the Spirit, because they are judging with their human intellect.

Galatians 5:22–23

"22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,
23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law."

Ephesians 5:9

"9 (For the fruit of the Spirit *is* in all goodness and righteousness and truth;)"

When we see a tree full of peaches, we know it is a peach tree. When we see a tree full of lemons, we know it is a lemon tree.

Likewise: When we see a person who is genuinely full of the fruit of the Spirit of God, we know he/she is a genuine Christian who is following the leading of the Spirit of God.



A Summary Path

God, through the prophet Joel, promises to pour out his Spirit upon all his people: great and small; male and female; ordinary people and Church leaders; etc.

We find John the Baptist proclaiming Christ would baptize people with the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(immerse them into the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*.

Before Jesus Christ ascended up into heaven, he instructed his Disciples to wait in Jerusalem until they received the promise of the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

About 120 followers of Jesus Christ, including the mother of Jesus, waited in Jerusalem for the promise of the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

On the day of Pentecost Christ's followers received the promise of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. When they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, all of them broke out speaking in tongues *(in foreign languages)* as the Holy Ghost/Spirit gave them utterance *(put the words in their mouth)*.

The people who heard them speaking in tongues were amazed/marveled. They were hearing the Galileans *(a people who were considered uneducated)* speaking in many foreign languages.

Then St. Peter stood up and told everyone: Act 2:16–18

"16 But this is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel;
17 And it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams:
18 And on my servants and on my handmaidens I will pour out in those days of my Spirit; and they shall prophesy:"

Speaking in Tongues Acts 2:33

"33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear."

(the "promise" is the promise of the Holy Ghost/Spirit)

**"For the promise is unto you, and to your children,
and to all that are afar off,
even as many as the Lord our God shall call"** Acts 2:39

"39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

In Acts 8:12–16, we find baptized believers who did not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit. They received the Holy Ghost/Spirit on a later date. It is possible to be a believer who is baptized in the name of the **"Lord Jesus"** and still not have the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

I**n Acts 19:1–7, we find** people who were baptized unto John the Baptist's baptism, who did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit until they were re-baptized in the name of the **"Lord Jesus"**.

In some Biblical accounts, people received the Holy Ghost/Spirit when Holy Ghost/Spirit filled Church leaders laid their hands upon them. We need to note all of these believers were already baptized in the name of the **"Lord Jesus"** *(Acts 8:16–17, 19:5–6)*.

If we want to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, we need to repent and be baptized **"in the name of Jesus Christ"**, and ask God for the Holy Ghost/Spirit. We need to be sure to give ourselves to Jesus Christ 100%, desiring to have him first in our hearts and lives.

Ask God

**"*your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit
to them that ask him"** Luke 11:13

"13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?"

Obey God

**"the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given
to them that obey him"** Acts 5:32

"32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him."

“if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you.
Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ,
he is none of his” Romans 8:8–9

“8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.
9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.”

To be a genuine Christian and go to Heaven, we need the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(the Spirit of God)* dwelling inside us: teaching us, leading us, guiding us, inspiring us, convicting us, and molding us into righteousness. We need the power of the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(the Spirit who is in Christ)* to perform the will of God. The Holy Ghost/Spirit is our real source of strength and understanding.

Genuine Christians connect/communicate with God through the Holy Ghost/Spirit. We are largely Spiritually blind without the Holy Ghost/Spirit. We cannot see, perceive, behold, know, or discern, the deeper things of God, without the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside us

What people do not realize

If we knew Jesus Christ was in a room, many people would run to him: to talk with him; to touch him; to see and hear him. All these things *(seeing, touching, hearing)* are in the physical world.

Most people do not realize they can get this close to God in the Spiritual world; God is Spiritually tangible. We can get closer and closer to God by loving and praising him from the uttermost depth of our heart. God hears our heart loving and praising him, and he comes to us. However, if the praises are not genuinely coming from our heart, the words do nothing.

If we have given ourselves completely to Jesus Christ, if our main goal in life is to do his will, if we love him with all our heart, mind, soul and strength, if we get down on our knees with our hands lifted high toward God, if we love and praise him out loud from the uttermost depth of our heart *(may be done in private)*, if we do this for a period of time, we

have a good possibility the Spirit of God will come over us as never before. When the Spirit of God comes over us to this magnitude, we may speak in tongues, dance in the Spirit, etc. We need to be careful not to put forth an effort to speak utterances. When we speak in tongues, God is the one doing it; we just listen to the words pouring out of our mouth. God gives us the ability to quench the Spirit of God, so we need to be careful not to quench the Spirit of God, and block speaking in tongues, dancing in the Spirit, etc. We need to relax and let God continue. If this happens to you, you will be feeling God as you never felt him before; you will know you are in the presence of God. If this happens to you, remember you still need to obey Acts 2:38. If we just go through the motions, with a heart which is not totally given to God, nothing will happen.

Why do genuine Christians desire to speak in tongues, dance in the Spirit, etc.?

When we are genuinely speaking in tongues, dancing in the Spirit, etc., God is Spiritually tangible *(he is with us, exceedingly)*; it is extremely pleasurable to feel and love God to this magnitude.

People who have never genuinely spoken in tongues, or danced in the Spirit, cannot imagine this thrilling interaction with God. If you truly love God, you want these interactions with him. These interactions are not what you do; they are what happens to you.

If you want these interactions with God, you need to put forth an intensive effort to draw yourself closer and closer to God with a right heart, including striving to obey him in all things. You need to get down on your knees, raise your hands up towards God, praise him, and extremely love him from the uttermost depth of your heart *(praise Jesus Christ out loud in privacy; do it for a period of time)*. Remember, part of loving God is obeying him; obey Acts 2:38

God, and the real Spiritual world, is a part of genuine reality. Most people do not see it, because God

largely blinds the people, who do NOT wholeheartedly love God, from seeing a lot of it. Because most people do not see or detect it, they mark the genuine Spiritual world up as people's imagination. But God and the real Spiritual world are really real, and people will wake-up to it, some of them will wake-up to it after their body dies. Then comes Judgment Day. People do not detect everything that is reality.

Did I receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit,
since *(or when)* I believed?

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

AA
Speaking in tongues

The Spirit of God causing a person to speak in a language unknown to them.

Speaking in tongues is very hard *(maybe impossible)* to explain to someone who never genuinely spoke in tongues. It is like trying to explain a beautiful sunset to a blind person who never saw any light or color.

We can show people scriptures that support speaking in tongues, and Bible verses concerning speaking in tongues, but they will never grasp speaking in tongues, until God speaks THROUGH THEM *(through their own mouth).*

It seems that most people will not accept speaking in tongues, because speaking in tongues is too far out for them to imagine and accept, even though it is talked about in the Bible. I say they need to be constantly striving to draw themselves closer and closer to God with all their heart, until God causes them to speak in tongues.

Speaking in tongues is not learned; it is a supernatural action caused by God. Speaking in tongues is not something we do, it is something God does. God gives the utterance.

Just because someone says that they, you, or someone else is speaking in tongues, does not make it true. The only way speaking in tongues is genuine is **IF** the Spirit of God is truly the one causing the utterance. Speaking in tongues is not always about receiving a message from God.

If we study the Biblical accounts of people speaking in tongues on Pentecost, at Cornelius's house, and at Ephesus, it is apparent **the people who spoke in tongues did not know anything about speaking in tongues**; God just came upon them and they spoke in tongues *(different languages)* as the Spirit of God gave them utterance. It is apparent that the hearts of these people were fully given to God. We need to focus on God, loving him and praising him from the deep depth of our heart. Any genuine loving touch from God is greatly exciting and edifying.

A belief concludes, if we did not speak in tongues, we did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. This belief is based on the Biblical pattern, that the people in the Bible spoke in tongues when they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, starting with the Apostles on the day of Pentecost. They will say this is what happen to me, and happens to other people in my church. They simply believe that speaking in tongues happens when people receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. I cannot find anything in the Bible that would show their belief incorrect.

There is no direct statement in the Bible that tells us we must speak in tongues, however, speaking in tongues, when the people initially received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, is a repeated Biblical pattern. We are to identify who has the Holy Ghost/Spirit by the fruit of the Spirit in their life *(God molding them into a Godly person)*. They believe speaking in tongues is the first evidence of receiving the Holy Ghost, and is confirmed by the Holy Ghost/Spirit producing the fruit of the Spirit in their lives.

"the natural man receiveth not
the things of the Spirit of God:
for they are foolishness unto him" 1 Corinthians 2:14

"14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned."

God's ways are often completely contrary to human logic. I believe the unusual ways that God does things is one of the ways God hides Spiritual understanding from the unbelievers, until they believe.

If I did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, what should I do? The simple answer: we need to keep growing and drawing our self closer and closer to God with all of our heart.

How can we draw nigh unto God? How can we get to the point of having an extremely close relationship with God? To begin with, we need to have God as our first love *(if we list all the things we love, God is first, above everyone and everything)*. We need to recognize that with God we need to wholeheartedly do everything from the deepest depth of

our heart, or our efforts will be in vain. We need to take some time daily, for prayer, and for prayerful Bible study. We need to take some time every day to sincerely wholeheartedly worship God *(Jesus Christ)* from the deepest depth of our heart *(getting down on our knees, lifting our hands up towards Heaven, and speaking praises out loud directly to him* [*We may do these things in private])*. We need to be genuinely desiring and striving to always obey God with our utmost effort; genuinely striving to give our self totally to Jesus Christ, to follow and obey him at all times; etc. God pours his Spirit upon the people who genuinely wholeheartedly LOVE God with their all. And the people who genuinely LOVE Jesus Christ, obey Jesus Christ.

If we want the genuine touch from God, our whole heart needs to be, and greatly desiring to be, drawing nigh to God, for a superior closer relationship with God.

Remember: God will not forsake people who genuinely love him, and are genuinely striving to obey him, with all of their heart.

Getting involved in the things of God is getting involved in the good side of the supernatural.

Many people cannot imagine themselves speaking in tongues. It just seems unnatural, strange, and foreign to them. They prefer just to leave it alone, telling themselves "Speaking in tongues is not for me." We do not want to make decisions before we do an honest and prayerful Bible study. When we decide things first, like deciding speaking in tongues is not for us, then hunt in the Bible for verses to support our decision/belief, it is very likely we will end up molding, shaping, and rationalizing our interpretation of the Scriptures to support what we want to believe. The Bible is to mold our beliefs; our beliefs are not to mold the interpretation of the Scriptures.



We must not be afraid to prayerfully and honestly study what the entire Bible has to say about speaking in tongues. If we reject speaking in tongues, are we rejecting what God has for us? Let us put all our trust in God to give us the correct understanding.

We need to consider ALL of the Bible verses about speaking in tongues. We do not want to be found considering the book of 1 Corinthians, and ignoring the book of Acts.

It is in the book of Acts where we find the people speaking in tongues upon receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

In 1 Corinthians we find instructions/information written to, and intended for, people who have already received the Holy Ghost/Spirit. These instructions are mostly about speaking in tongues during a church Service. *(1 Corinthians – Chapters 12, 13, and 14)*

When people imply you need to speak in tongues in order to go to heaven, they are saying "You need to have your burning bush encounter with God *(meet God, receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*", because we connect to God through the Holy Ghost/Spirit. These people read in the Bible *(repeatedly)* about people speaking in tongues when they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, the same thing happened to them, and they see it happening to other people in their church. They see the huge Godly change in people who have genuinely received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who have genuinely spoken in tongues, and continue in the path of Jesus Christ. They believe speaking in tongues naturally takes place when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. They believe speaking in tongues and receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit are tied together. If you tell them "I have not spoken in tongues." they hear you saying "I have not received the Holy Ghost /Spirit yet." Because they see speaking in tongues as the first evidence of receiving the Holy Ghost /Spirit.

If someone comes up to me and says he did not speak in tongues, and tells me he has the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of him, I am not going to argue with him, because I do not know what interactions he has had with God. I will

encourage him to keep growing deeper and deeper into God. If he truly loves God with his uttermost, I believe God will take him to the point where he speaks in tongues, making him hundreds of times closer to God. The pathway to this encounter with God is through giving ourselves absolutely/totally to Jesus Christ: loving him, obeying him, and speaking praises directly to him out loud from the uttermost depth of our heart *(Speaking praises out loud may be done in private)*.

We become like the people around us: we start talking like them, dressing like them, thinking like them, etc. With God dwelling inside of us, we start growing into the ways of God.

Am I resisting speaking in tongues?
Or do I pray, "Lord, if speaking in tongues
is in your plans for me, give me a double portion.?"

The first time I remember speaking in tongues and dancing in the Spirit, it took me immensely deeper into God. I say "the first time I remember" because I may have spoken a few words in tongues earlier, and not knowing what was happening to me, I may have quenched the Spirit of God. I do remember the Spirit of God being all over me.

Before I remember speaking in tongues, I loved God, I read my Bible, I was strong headed for doing what I believed God wanted me to do, I prayed, God was working in my life, etc. Yet with all of this, I still felt as something was missing. I visited a Church where genuine praise/worship was being given to God from the bottom of the heart, and I could feel the Spirit of God moving. I was baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ". One night at church, when I was praising God and giving myself totally to Jesus Christ, I started speaking in tongues and dancing in the Spirit. I could feel God enormously all over me. I remember saying to myself, "God is really real"; which seemed strange, because I already knew God was real. It was as if I opened a door,

and right there was God himself. I call it my burning bush encounter with God. This encounter with God started me to grow much closer to God. My speaking in tongues was not so much about the words, it was about my genuine Spiritual encounter with God. God's overwhelming presence caused me to speak in tongues, and dance in the Spirit, as I was reaching out to him with my all.

When you have this experience, you will know God is real; you will know you have met God. He will be dwelling inside you, changing you into a person who desires and strives to always do God's will with love.

"Quench not the Spirit" 1 Thessalonians 5:19

"19 Quench not the Spirit."

When we study speaking in tongues, we must not put our fingers into our ears. The will of God needs to be fulfilled in us, whatever it is, even if it seems strange and foreign. We must not avoid, quench, or add to, the working of the Spirit of God

The word tongues means languages. Speaking in tongues is speaking in languages. The Biblical speaking in tongues is an exclusive operation *(exclusive to the Spirit of God)*. The speaking *(the words)* does not originate from the person; God puts the words into the person's mouth. The utterance originates from God, and God knows all languages.



The utterance might be in any language unknown to the person, even in languages of Angels. If the utterance originates from the person, and not from the Spirit of God, it is fake. Yes, we need to mind authenticity.

I believe there is a diversity of speaking in tongues which takes place upon receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit, and sometimes occurs when we are praying and praising

God from the bottom of our heart *(speaking praises directly to Jesus Christ)*. I believe this diversity of speaking in tongues is between the individual and God. It could be praying or praising Jesus Christ in a different language. Feeling the overwhelming presence of God when we speak in tongues is very enjoyable and edifying. When we feel God upon us to this magnitude, our Spiritual life gets supercharged.

Some people seem to speak in tongues about every time they praise the Lord. Others may only speak a few words in tongues, occasionally.

Speaking in tongues is a part of Christianity.

"they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues" Acts 2:4

"4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance."

"they heard them speak with tongues" Acts 10:46

"46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,"

"they spake with tongues" Acts 19:6

"6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied."

When we study the Biblical accounts of receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit, the recipients spoke in tongues. The moment could be witnessed by others: at Pentecost *(Acts 2)*; at Cornelius's house *(Acts 10)*; and at Ephesus *(Acts 19)*.

The only time speaking in tongues is genuine
is when the Spirit of God
is the one giving the utterance.



Some people are afraid they will not be able to discern genuine speaking in tongues from what is not genuine. How can we discern what is genuine?

First, we need to mind what we say. We do not want to be found speaking against *(running down)* the things of God. If we do not know if it is genuine, it is smart to hold our tongue in silence.

• **When the Holy Ghost/Spirit speaks** through a person, the person will feel and recognize God.

• **How can we discern** what is genuine, when we hear others speaking in tongues with interpretation?

- **We need to pray** about it, and trust the Holy Ghost /Spirit to give us proper judgment. Holy Ghost/Spirit filled Christians can normally sense when something is amiss.
- **When I hear** tongues and interpretation, I take into account who the tongues and interpretation came through. Are they people who are genuinely striving to live the Christian life, loving, serving, and obeying God?
- **When people follow** the leading of the Spirit of God, doing God's will, they will Spiritually grow upward. When people do not follow the leading of the Spirit of God, and do things contrary to God, they will Spiritually deteriorate. Sometimes basically everyone can see the deterioration; other times it takes a Holy Ghost/Spirit filled Christian to properly recognize it.
- **Faking** tongues and interpretation is a very serious thing. If people start faking tongues and interpretation, in time, we will see them Spiritually deteriorate.
- **Genuine tongues and interpretation will not** oppose correctly interpreted Scripture.
- **If someone prophesies something** will happen, and it does not happen, the declaration came from the person, not God. However, we must not be hasty to judge the prophecy, because human analysis can interpret a genuine prophecy incorrectly. Did the prophecy really say what we thought it was saying, or did we misinterpret it?

• **Holy Ghost/Spirit filled Christians** trust God to give them proper judgment. Without the Spirit of God's help, we are all incapable of making proper judgments in Spiritual matters.

If we have not spoken in tongues, we need to draw extremely close to the Lord Jesus Christ: in love; in obedience; in prayer; in praise; etc. In my experience and observation, speaking in tongues occurs when we get extremely close to God in Spirit.

• **Do we truly believe** Jesus Christ is the Son of God?

• **Do we truly** believe Jesus Christ arose from the dead?

• **Have we truly** decided to exit the ways of the world *(sin)*, to constantly follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness? Have we truly decided to obey Christ's commandments?

• **Have we truly** decided to have Jesus Christ in first place, ahead of everyone and everything?

• **Were we baptized in** the name of "Jesus Christ" by immersion, after we repented *(truly decided to exit the ways of the world [sin] to constantly follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness)*?

• **Do we truly** love God with all our heart, mind, soul, and strength?

• **Do we tell him** "I love you" a number of times each day?

• **How much** effort do we put forth to learn and do God's will?

• **Do we read** and study the Bible daily?

• **Do we get down on** our knees and praise him with all our heart, speaking directly to him daily?

• **Do we do** all the above from the depth of our heart.

When Holy Ghost/Spirit filled Christians spend some time drawing nigh to God by praising him to his face from the bottom of their heart, they will often speak in tongues. Speaking in tongues is part of the Christian experience.

Remember: We need to mind authenticity. For speaking in tongues to be genuine, God must be causing the utterance.

Everyone who genuinely loves and desires God wants to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. This overwhelming one on one encounter with God places us in God, and God inside us.

People who love God and push off speaking in tongues do not know what/who they are pushing off. They have never had this experience with God, thus their human mind cannot comprehend it's importance. Only after a person has genuinely spoken in tongues, danced in the Spirit, etc., can he comprehend the enormous value of these touches from God.



Speaking praises to God out loud, **from the uttermost depth of our heart**, is one way to enter into the presence of God: praise God for a while. God only accepts the praises that come from the uttermost depth of our heart

Sometimes, when we are praising God, the words become harder to say; it as if we are praising God in our own language, and other words are trying to come out on top of our words. At this point we need to praise God more intensely, striving to praise him in our own language: genuine speaking in tongues will override our efforts to praise God in our own language. We need to know, when we speak in tongues, we did not aid the speaking in any way.

Just because someone tells us we spoke in tongues does not make it genuine. We may have seen and been taught about speaking in tongues. Without realizing it, we might start acting like the people who are speaking in

tongues, believing we are doing the same thing. But if we are causing the utterance, instead of God, we are not genuinely speaking in tongues. You could appear to be speaking in tongues to the people watching you, and they might tell you “You are speaking in tongues”. However, you are the one who actually knows if you encountered God, if you had direct contact with God himself.

If we did not have our burning bush encounter with God, we need to keep drawing closer and closer to Jesus Christ, praising him daily, until we have our one on one encounter with God.

People believe speaking in tongues is what naturally happens when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Get your Bible and check it out.

If you believe the Spirit of God is dwelling inside you,
if you believe you love Jesus Christ with your all,
get down on your knees,
lift your hands up toward God,
and love and praise Jesus Christ
out loud with all your heart,
and see what happens.

You may do it in privacy.

Be sure to do it for at least five minutes.

Remember to obey Acts 2:38.

May God Bless You with Truth



aa
Diversities of Speaking in Tongues

When people talk about speaking in tongues, many people visualize tongues and interpretation. Tongues and interpretation is only one Biblical diversity of speaking in tongues. Speaking in tongues is not always about a message.

"diversities of tongues" 1 Corinthians 12:28

"28 And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues."

"*divers* kinds of tongues" 1 Corinthians 12:10

"10 To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues:"

Speaking in tongues on the day of Pentecost

Jews from many different countries came back to Jerusalem for the Jewish feast of Pentecost *(Feast of Weeks)*. They heard the recipients of the Holy Ghost/Spirit speaking in tongues. These foreign Jews were astounded, because they heard these Galileans *(people who were considered uneducated)* speaking in their own foreign languages. God was causing the people who received the Holy Ghost/Spirit to speak in these languages. On the day of Pentecost the people understood what was said without an interpreter.

There is a diversity of languages in speaking in tongues.

"how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?" (in our own language) Acts 2:3–12

"3 And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them.
4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.
5 ¶ And there were dwelling at Jerusalem Jews, devout men, out of every nation under heaven.

6 Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.
7 And they were all amazed and marveled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?
8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?
9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,
10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,
11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.
12 And they were all amazed, and were in doubt, saying one to another, What meaneth this?"

Even languages of angels

1 Corinthians 13:1

"1 ¶ Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become *as* sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal."

There is a speaking in tongues where one person speaks, one interprets, and the rest listen.

Interpretation of tongues is Biblically listed as a Spiritual gift. With this gift a message can be interpreted by someone who does not know the language, because God gives him the interpretation.

"to another the interpretation of tongues"

1 Corinthians 12:10

"10 To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues:"



"let one interpret"

"27 If any man speak in an *unknown* tongue, *let it be* by two, or at the most *by* three, and *that* by course; and let one interpret."

A speaking in tongues that no man understands.

“no man understandeth *him*” 1 Corinthians 14:2

“2 For he that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto God: for no man understandeth *him*; howbeit in the spirit he speaketh mysteries.”

“edifieth himself” 1 Corinthians 14:4

“4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church.”

1 Corinthians 14:14

“14 For if I pray in an *unknown* tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful.”

Tongues and magnifying God

Acts 10:46

“46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,”

We read about speaking in tongues, where the whole group spoke in tongues at the same time.

ALL of them spoke in tongues.

“they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance” Acts 2:4

“4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.”

“the Holy Ghost fell on all them” (all of them)

“For they heard them speak with tongues” Acts 10:44–46

“44 ¶ While Peter yet spake these words, the Holy Ghost fell on all them which heard the word.
45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Ghost.
46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,”



Praying in tongues, and singing in tongues.

1 Corinthians 14:14–15

“14 For if I pray in an *unknown* tongue, my spirit prayeth, but my understanding is unfruitful.
15 ¶ What is it then? I will pray with the spirit, and I will pray with the understanding also: I will sing with the spirit, and I will sing with the understanding also.”

Tongues and Prophesying

Acts 19:6

“6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.”

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

bb

The Spiritual gift of tongues

The Spirit of God gives Spiritual gifts to genuine Spirit filled Christians. These Spiritual gifts give these Christians unusual capabilities to administer, perform, and accomplish the continuing work of Jesus Christ. Every Christian receives different Spiritual gifts, because each Christian has a different set of responsibilities in the work of Christ.

We can divide the Spiritual gifts into two categories:

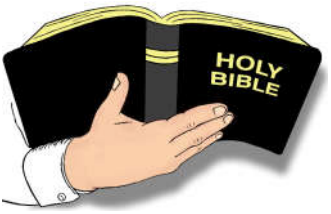


Gifts of excelling - The Spiritual gift of faith is a very good example. All Christians have faith, but the Spirit of God causes some Christians to excel in faith. Their mission for Christ will use this additional faith.

Special gifts - The Spiritual gift of interpretation of tongues is a good example. Only a small percentage of Christians are given the Spiritual gift to interpret speaking in tongues.

I believe speaking in tongues is for every Christian upon receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit, and when we are praying and praising God. I believe this diversity of speaking in tongues is mainly praising and praying to God in a different language. This touch of God greatly edifies the individual. *(I am not talking about the diversity of tongues called, "tongues and interpretation")*.

I also believe God gives some people special Spiritual gifts concerning speaking in tongues and interpretation. Through genuine tongues and interpretation, God might give instructions to the church assembly or individuals. Genuine speaking in tongues and interpretation edifies the whole church.



When we ponder the Spiritual gift of tongues, let us be sure we see all the words like ***"divers* kinds of tongues"** and **"diversities of tongues"**.

"*divers* kinds of tongues" 1 Corinthians 12:10

"10 To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another *divers* kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues:"

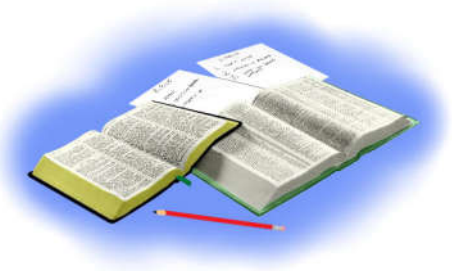
"diversities of tongues"

"do all speak with tongues?" 1 Corinthians 12:27–31

"27 ¶ Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular.
28 And God hath set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues.
29 *Are* all apostles? *are* all prophets? *are* all teachers? *are* all workers of miracles?
30 Have all the gifts of healing? do all speak with tongues? do all interpret?
31 But covet earnestly the best gifts: and yet shew I unto you a more excellent way."

Is the Spiritual gift in 1 Corinthians 12
Speaking in Tongues,
or is it the widening of speaking in tongues
into divers kinds of / diversities of tongues?

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.



cc
Decently and in order

1 Corinthians 14 gives us guidelines for doing things decently and in order during a church Service. A large portion of this chapter concerns speaking in tongues.

In the church at Corinth, the people were excited about speaking in tongues. In their excitement they were neglecting other parts of the church service which were needed to edify the whole assembly, and to convince unbelievers to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ.

The purpose of coming together for a church service is to edify *(Spiritually uplift)* each other in God, to praise the Lord, and to draw unbelievers to Jesus Christ. When a person draws nigh to God and speaks in tongues, he is Spiritually edified/uplifted by the Lord; but if nobody can interpret the tongues, he is the only one who is edified. We can draw nigh to God and speak in tongues at home to receive our own personal edification. Let us save the assembling of ourselves together for the edification of all, praising God, and learning about the Lord.

When genuine speaking in tongues is interpreted, the whole assembly is Spiritually uplifted, and it is a welcomed part of a church service. We also need to see and hear the other diversities of speaking in tongues, because we need to learn about them.

Preaching, when it is genuinely anointed by God, edifies all of us in our own language. This is to be a major part of the church service.

Let us study some things Paul wrote in his letter.

"He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church" 1 Corinthians 14:2–4

"2 For he that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue speaketh not unto men, but unto God: for no man understandeth *him*; howbeit in the spirit he speaketh mysteries.
3 But he that prophesieth speaketh unto men *to* edification, and exhortation, and comfort.
4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church."

“Yet in the church” 1 Corinthians 14:18–19

“18 I thank my God, I speak with tongues more than ye all:
19 Yet in the church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, that *by my voice* I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an *unknown* tongue.”

“tongues are for a sign” 1 Corinthians 14:22

“22 Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not: but prophesying *serveth* not for them that believe not, but for them which believe.”

“Let all things be done unto edifying” 1 Corinthians 14:26

“26 ¶ How is it then, brethren? when ye come together, every one of you hath a psalm, hath a doctrine, hath a tongue, hath a revelation, hath an interpretation. Let all things be done unto edifying.”

“*let it be* by two, or at the most *by* three, and *that* by course; and let one interpret” 1 Corinthians 14:27–28

“27 If any man speak in an *unknown* tongue, *let it be* by two, or at the most *by* three, and *that* by course; and let one interpret.
28 But if there be no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church; and let him speak to himself, and to God.”

“forbid not to speak with tongues”
“Let all things be done decently and in order” 1 Corinthians 14:39–40

“39 Wherefore, brethren, covet to prophesy, and forbid not to speak with tongues.
40 Let all things be done decently and in order.”

We learn that when we Spiritually enter deeply into the presence of God, we often end up speaking in tongues. If we want the Spiritual uplifting we receive when we speak in tongues *(when God is Spiritually tangible)*, we enter deeply into his presence. When God sees us drawing nigh to him for Spiritual uplifting, we can expect him to grant us our desire.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

dd
When will speaking in tongues cease?

The main subject of 1 Corinthians 13 is charity *(love)*. In this chapter Paul stresses the importance of charity. He states some segments of Christianity, which we hold high, are only for a period of time, but charity *(love)* continues forever.

Paul names some segments of Christianity which will end. One of them is speaking in tongues. Verse 8 mentions three things that will end: **speaking in tongues**, **prophecies**, and **knowledge**. Verse 9 only mentions 2 things: **knowledge** and **prophecies**. We need to understand genuine tongues with interpretation is a form of prophecy. I believe the Bible is saying speaking in tongues will cease/end, along with prophecies and knowledge. When will this happen? **"when that which is perfect is come"**.

"whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail"

"whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease"

"whether *there be* knowledge,
it shall vanish away" 1 Corinthians 13:8

"8 ¶ Charity never faileth: but whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail; whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease; whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away."

"shall fail" **"they shall cease"** **"shall vanish away"**

All the above phrases mean that it will come to an end.

"when that which is perfect is come,
then that which is in part
shall be done away" 1 Corinthians 13:8–10

"8 ¶ Charity never faileth: but whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail; whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease; whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away.
9 For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.
10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away."

I believe the phrase **"when that which is perfect is come"** is not referring to the Bible; rather, I believe it is referring to the day when perfect arrives, when everything will be perfect and complete: Heaven.

I am going to use the word, **"Now"**, to refer to the time before **"that which is perfect"** arrives, and I am going to use the word, **"Then"**, to refer to the time after **"that which is perfect"** arrives.

Let us compare some of the present day elements of Christianity to how it will be after **"that which is perfect"** arrives, to consider if the phrase, **"when that which is perfect is come"**, is referring to Heaven.

Knowledge "whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away"

"vanish away" means cease/end

Now: We study the Bible to assemble knowledge about God. We do not know and understand everything. We only see/understand some of the things of God; it is as if we are struggling to see the things of God through a dark window.

Then: In Heaven we will be in the presence of God, seeing him face to face. God will have given us complete knowledge/understanding. The collecting of knowledge *(learning)* will have vanished away *(ended)*.

Tongues "whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease"

Now: Speaking in tongues is for our edification, and for a sign to the unbelievers. We need the Spiritual edification *(uplifting)* which comes from this direct Spiritual contact with God.

1 Corinthians 14:4

"4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church."

1 Corinthians 14:22

"22 Wherefore tongues are for a sign, not to them that believe, but to them that believe not: but prophesying *serveth* not for them that believe not, but for them which believe."

Then: We will always be at the Spiritual highest in Heaven, because we will be in continual direct contact with God: seeing him; walking with him; talking to him face to face, etc. We will not need to speak in tongues for more edification.

There are no unbelievers in Heaven; signs will not be needed. Speaking in tongues will have ceased.

Prophesying **"whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail"**

Prophecies failing means prophesying will end. It does not mean genuine prophecies will fail to be fulfilled.

Now: We need prophesying, because we need the edification and knowledge it gives us. A message from God could come through anointed preaching, or through speaking in tongues and interpretation.

1 Corinthians 14:3–5

"3 But he that prophesieth speaketh unto men *to* edification, and exhortation, and comfort.
4 He that speaketh in an *unknown* tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church.
5 I would that ye all spake with tongues, but rather that ye prophesied: for greater *is* he that prophesieth than he that speaketh with tongues, except he interpret, that the church may receive edifying."

Then: In Heaven God will give us perfect and complete knowledge/understanding. There will not be any need for anointed preaching and the gaining of knowledge, because we will always be in the presence of God. Prophesying will have ceased.

Charity/Love **"Charity never faileth"** Charity/Love never ends.

Always: Love never ends. Love is for the present time, and will exist in Heaven forever.



1 Corinthians 13

The word “Charity” is referring to “LOVE”

1 ¶ Though I speak with the tongues of men and of angels, and have not charity, I am become *as* sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal.
2 And though I have *the gift of* prophecy, and understand all mysteries, and all knowledge; and though I have all faith, so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing.
3 And though I bestow all my goods to feed *the poor,* and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profiteth me nothing.
4 ¶ Charity suffereth long, *and* is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up,
5 Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil;
6 Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth;
7 Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.
8 ¶ Charity never faileth: but whether *there be* prophecies, they shall fail; whether *there be* tongues, they shall cease; whether *there be* knowledge, it shall vanish away.
9 For we know in part, and we prophesy in part.
10 But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.
11 When I was a child, I spake as a child, I understood as a child, I thought as a child: but when I became a man, I put away childish things.
12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then shall I know even as also I am known.
13 And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these *is* charity.”

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

BB
Feeling God's presence

We were made to praise God, and God makes praising him extremely exciting for everyone whose spirit makes direct contact with his Spirit.

The first time we are overwhelmed with the power/glory of God, which may result with us genuinely speaking in tongues, dancing in the Spirit, etc., we will be amazed. We never dreamed this kind of contact/interaction with God existed. Being overwhelmed with the Spirit of God immensely accelerates our craving to serve the Lord, supercharging our Spiritual batteries.

We might hear someone say, "I attended church for years; I thought I had everything Christianity had to offer. I never dreamed such an exciting, thrilling, overwhelming presence and power of God was available to us. Wow! It is awesome to be overwhelmed by the Spirit of God, actually being able to feel him". God is Spiritually tangible.

During a church service,
we might feel God touching our hearts,
causing tears in our eyes.
This is not a time to withdraw,
but a time to go further into
the presence of God,
praising him more intensely .
We do not want to stop at the door.

It is a time to lift our hands and praise the Lord:
loving him; giving him a big Spiritual hug; telling him from the bottom of our heart, "Jesus, you are great and wonderful," "I love you", and "I want you first place in my life, above everyone and everything."

A man born without eyes cannot imagine green. People whose spirit never had direct contact with God's Spirit cannot begin to imagine this experience.

Illustration: There was a man making all kinds of faces, twisting his body, and doing weird body movements. We wanted to know what was wrong with him?" Upon further investigation we found he was singing to music, and acting to the beat. But when we did not hear the music, his actions looked very weird.

Likewise: Christian activity *(genuinely speaking in tongues, dancing in the spirit, singing in tongues, etc.)* can appear very peculiar to people who never had these experiences. It is impossible for people who never had these experiences to imagine the electrifying presence of God, which results with genuine Christians bursting into these things.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

CC
Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit is drawing nigh to God *(Jesus Christ)*, and completely giving ourselves to him.

In some churches, people who have given their heart to Christ, and were baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of their sins, but have not spoken in tongues, will go to the church altar and tarry for the Holy Ghost/Spirit, until they speak in tongues. Why? What is tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit?

In order to go to Heaven, the Bible states we must have the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(the Spirit of God)* dwelling in us. When we study the Biblical accounts of people receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(the Spirit who was in Christ)*, we find a repeated Biblical pattern: the recipients spoke in tongues. We find no Biblical evidence anyone received the Holy Ghost/Spirit without speaking in tongues. It is believed speaking in tongues naturally takes place when we have our burning bush encounter with God, when we receive the Holy Ghost /Spirit.

The belief concludes, if we did not speak in tongues, we did not receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit. This belief is based on Biblical records of what happened in the Bible, personal experiences, and eye witnessing: speaking in tongues is what happened in the Bible; speaking in tongues is what happened to them, and they see speaking in tongues happening to others in their church. They see the big Godly change in the person's life after he received the Holy Ghost /Spirit, genuinely spoke in tongues, and continues to follow the Spirit of God.

There is no direct statement in the Bible that tells us we must speak in tongues, however, speaking in tongues, when the people initially received the Holy Ghost/Spirit, is a repeated Biblical pattern, starting with the Apostles on the day of Pentecost.

We are to identify who has the Holy Ghost/Spirit by the fruit of the Spirit in their life *(God molding them into a Godly person)*. They believe speaking in tongues is the first evidence of receiving the Holy Ghost, and is confirmed by the Holy Ghost/Spirit producing the fruit of the Spirit in their lives.

Sometimes people who are tarrying for the Holy Ghost /Spirit, or people who are observing others tarrying, do not understand the actions. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit is drawing nigh to God. It is not begging God. It is not repeating words. It is not learning how to speak utterances.

We must not put forth any effort to copy someone speaking in tongues. We need to know we did not help/aid the speaking; we need to know the only thing we did was draw nigh to God. We need to positively know the speaking in tongues was caused by the Spirit of God. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit is completely giving ourselves to Jesus Christ *(placing him first)*, loving him and praising him from the utmost bottom of our heart.

When we give our lives to Jesus Christ, we need to understand God can only accept first place. A good way to start drawing nigh to God is by doing a personal examination. We should get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward God, and tell Jesus Christ from the depth of our heart, we want him first in our life: ahead of our parents; ahead of our children; ahead of our home; ahead of our career; ahead of our money; etc.

If we find an area where we have a hard time meaning it from the depth of our heart, we need to pray for God's help. As long as we genuinely desire to have God in first place, above everyone and everything, God will help us accomplish it. Putting Jesus Christ first in our life will result with a large increase in the love and care we give to our family and everyone.



The most important commandment

"love the Lord thy God with all thy"

"this *is* the first commandment" Mark 12:30

"30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment."

Following Jesus Christ's instructions will be our first priority, when we have Jesus Christ in first place. His instructions are to love God, and do what is good and righteous.

Having Jesus Christ in first place, above our family, does not reduce the importance of our family. Exalting him to first place, loving him more than anything or anyone *(even our family)*, increases and enhances the love and care we give to our family and others. God is love. When God is dwelling inside us, love is dwelling inside us, and the love we receive from God will shine through us. The love and care we give to our family and others will grow.

Are we asking Jesus Christ into our life,
but only offering him second or third place?
If we want Jesus Christ in our lives,
we need to put him in his rightful place,
honoring him as God.

Matthew 10:37

"37 He that loveth father or mother more than me is not worthy of me: and he that loveth son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me."

Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit includes praising and worshiping God from the bottom of our heart, and expressing love and appreciation to him.

The Bible states God is seeking true worshipers. If we genuinely worship/praise God from the bottom of our heart, God will come to us, because God is seeking for people who worship him in spirit and in truth. Praising Jesus Christ with our whole heart is a very powerful way to get God's attention.

When we have God's attention, we can communicate with him at a much higher level. It seems most people do not realize all the power and potential which comes as a result of genuinely loving and praising Jesus Christ.

"the true worshippers"

"for the Father seeketh such to worship him" John 4:23

"23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him."

The devil cannot tolerate Jesus Christ being praised. If we sincerely praise God and resist the devil, we can create a place within us where God is at hand and the devil has departed.

"Resist the devil"

"Draw nigh to God" James 4:7–8

"7 Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.
8 Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse *your* hands, *ye* sinners; and purify *your* hearts, *ye* double minded."

I have witnessed through observations and personal experiences, we will get God's attention when we love and honor him as God. We need to get down on our knees, raise our hands up toward God, and genuinely praise him out loud from the bottom of our heart *(may be done in private)*. This gets God's attention, and God will come to us. If the praise does not come from the bottom of our heart, our efforts will be in vain.

When we are praying and praising God, it is good to visualize Jesus Christ sitting on his throne in Heaven. He is King over everyone and everything.

"with *our* hands" Lamentations 3:41

"41 Let us lift up our heart with *our* hands unto God in the heavens."

"the lifting up of my hands" Psalms 141:2

"2 Let my prayer be set forth before thee *as* incense; *and* the lifting up of my hands *as* the evening sacrifice."

“let us kneel” Psalms 95:6

“6 O come, let us worship and bow down: let us kneel before the LORD our maker.”

“every knee should bow” Philippians 2:10

“10 That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of *things* in heaven, and *things* in earth, and *things* under the earth;”

We were created to praise/worship God, and God makes worshiping/praising him extremely pleasurable.

Most people have trouble comprehending how worshiping and praising God can be exciting and pleasurable. It becomes exciting and pleasurable when our spirit and God’s Spirit make direct contact. It is exciting and pleasurable when we can feel God all over us *(God is Spiritually tangible)*, and we know without a doubt we are positively feeling God. Sometimes God’s touch will cause us to speak in tongues. These touches greatly excite our innermost being to serve the Lord. These touches edify us *(See 1 Corinthians 14:4)*.

“make a loud noise, and rejoice,
and sing praise” Psalms 98:4

“4 ¶ Make a joyful noise unto the LORD, all the earth: make a loud noise, and rejoice, and sing praise.”

“Praise him” “Praise him” Psalms 150

“1 ¶ Praise ye the LORD. Praise God in his sanctuary: praise him in the firmament of his power.
2 Praise him for his mighty acts: praise him according to his excellent greatness.
3 Praise him with the sound of the trumpet: praise him with the psaltery and harp.
4 Praise him with the timbrel and dance: praise him with stringed instruments and organs.
5 Praise him upon the loud cymbals: praise him upon the high sounding cymbals.
6 Let every thing that hath breath praise the LORD. Praise ye the LORD.”

Praising Jesus Christ is having a good time celebrating our best friend's triumphs, glory, greatness, etc. Jesus Christ is positively our very best friend *(he loved us so much he suffered greatly and died for us)*. We can celebrate Jesus by putting our praises for him into joyful songs, and sing about his greatness!

We sing praises about God, but how often do we sing praises directly to him? Instead of always singing "Jesus is wonderful," let us sing "Jesus, you are wonderful". Speaking and singing praises directly to him makes it more personal.

When we honor a man, we may shake his hand and pat him on the back. We can also use body language when we praise Jesus Christ. Let us praise God with our voice, and our arms raised. It is important to put forth extra efforts for God.



It seems easier for most people to draw nigh to God when they are around other people who are sincerely worshiping God. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(drawing nigh to God)* is often done at the church altar. When we draw nigh to God at the altar, it offers an opportunity for the laying on of hands, to ask questions, and to be advised. Nevertheless, drawing nigh to God can be done anywhere and anytime, even alone in our bedroom.

In our private time with God, let us spend some time loving him, giving him gigantic Spiritual hugs. Let us give Jesus Christ the exalted admiration he deserves, telling him he is great and wonderful. We also need to tell others about his greatness.

God discerns the magnitude and intent of the praises we give him. He discerns how much we truly mean it. Unless praise is genuinely coming from our heart, it is worthless noise. Obedience is the first area of drawing nigh to God. When we praise God, do we sometimes get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward him, etc.? God observes if we strive to go the extra mile.

Throughout each day, we need to tell Jesus Christ things like the following: “You are the great, wonderful, and merciful one;” “I love you;” “I want you to be first in my life;” “I want to do your will, and I want to be what you want me to be.”

God desires to be loved
by people
who choose to love him.



God opens the eyes *(the understanding)* of people who truly love him, so they can see the way of salvation, and become a part of the Bride of Christ. The Bible refers to genuine believers as God’s children, and the Bride of Christ. We *(all the genuine Christians together)* are marrying Christ *(God)*, and this is large-scale awesome. We need to love Jesus Christ with a genuine bubbling love, for he is our groom and our God. We need to give Jesus Christ the same kind of love as a girl, who is deeply in love, gives to the man she is marrying:

Giving him Spiritual hugs;

Telling him often, “I love you.”;

Smiling and being full of joy in his presence;

Doing things to please him;

Dressing the way he likes to see me;

Conducting myself properly, so I do not cause him shame;

Spiritually spending time in his lap, with my arms around him, enjoying him;

Eagerly watching out the window for his return;



God knows if he is our first love *(if we put everyone and every thing we love in a list, God is first)*, above everyone and everything.

Is tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit Biblical?

Let us look at things one by one.

• Having God in first place, above everyone and everything, is Biblical.

• Prayer is Biblical.

• Praising God is Biblical.

• Drawing nigh to God is Biblical.

• Kneeling is Biblical

• Lifting up our hands toward God is Biblical

• Loving God with all our heart, soul, mind, and strength, is Biblical.

The things we talked about in tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit are Biblical components of loving and serving God. Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit is drawing nigh to God, completely giving ourselves to him. People who receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit while doing the above will instruct others to do the same things.

The term "Tarrying for the Holy Ghost" is not in the Bible. People saw individuals were receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit when they were doing what they should have been doing in the first place: getting down on their knees with uplifted hands, praising and loving God from the depth of their heart; giving themselves completely to Jesus Christ; etc. Someone started calling these acts "Tarrying for the Holy Ghost". The term, "Tarrying for the Holy Ghost," caught on, and other people started using this phrase.

When we study the accounts of people speaking in tongues in the Bible *(when they received the Holy Ghost)*, it is apparent that most of them, or all of them, did not know anything about speaking in tongues. Their heart was totally given to God, they loved God, and the Spirit of God simply started talking in a foreign language through their mouth *(God often does things in ways that seem strange to mankind)*. We need to wholeheartedly give more of our self, more love, and more of our heart, totally to Jesus Christ, and greatly praise him from the bottom of our heart.

Some of us give ourselves totally to Jesus Christ in one plunge. Others of us who are more questioning take a number of steps before we give ourselves completely to him. We need to increase our love for God, and draw nigh to him with diligence. We need to keep tarrying *(drawing nigh to God)* until Christ is truly first place in our heart, until we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

I believe, if we have not spoken in tongues, it is likely because of one or more of the following:

- We do not love and worship God with our all: all our heart; all our soul, all our mind, all our strength.
- We do not get down on our knees with our hands raised high toward God, praising Jesus Christ out loud from the deep depth of our heart *(may be done in private)*.
- Jesus Christ is not our number one love and priority.
- Acts 2:38 has not been fully obeyed.
- We are quenching the Spirit of God?

Better communications with God

I found my communications with God climbed to a much higher level when I praised him out loud from the bottom of my heart. God is seeking my praise. Let us praise God from the depth of our heart, and God will come to us. Then we can communicate with him at a much higher level.

My advice for anyone who desires better communications with God, is the following:

- Put on *(join)* Jesus Christ for the remission of your sins by obeying Acts 2:38.
- Earnestly pray every day for a closer relationship with God.
- Give yourself totally to Jesus Christ, putting him first, above family, job, and everything.
- Sincerely and prayerfully read from the New Testament every day, searching for ways to serve God better. *(We also need the Old Testament.)*

• Get down on your knees with your hands lifted up toward God, and genuinely praise him from the bottom of your heart, speaking directly to him out loud *(may be done in private)*.

• Wholeheartedly strive to obey God in all things, doing your best to live morally, righteously, lovingly, etc.

• For proper communications with God, we need the Holy Ghost/Spirit continually living/dwelling inside us.

Speaking in Tongues

When we say speaking in tongues, many individuals automatically think about tongues and interpretation.

Tongues and interpretation is only one diversity of speaking in tongues. This diversity is only given to some Christians as a Spiritual gift.

Speaking in tongues is not always interpreted. I see the type of speaking in other tongues talked about in 1 Corinthians 14:4 as the Spirit of God overwhelming us as we are genuine praying and praising God; this may result with us praying and praising him in another language *(No interpretation)*. Feeling God upon us when this happens greatly edifies us, supercharging our Spiritual batteries.

In the Bible, the people spoke in tongues when they received the Holy Ghost/Spirit. It is a touch from God.

This touch took me from being stirred by God to being with God; I could actually feel him all over me. This touch changed the rest of my life, resulting with me having an extremely closer walk with God.

I want you to have this overwhelming touch from God, so you will be extremely closer to him. People who never had this touch do not know what I am talking about. This touch from God will change the rest of your life.

We need to give Jesus Christ a big Spiritual hug every day, loving him from the bottom of our heart. Every time we acknowledge Jesus Christ's immense greatness, and put him first, it touches God's heart, resulting with us having better communications with God.

Remember,
God is seeking for the true worshipers,
so let us be one of them.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.





8

Is what we believe to be Reality, truly Reality?

&

Sin, and its consequences

(SIN is doing things contrary to the will of God,
NOT Cooperating with God, NOT doing God's will.
SIN is fighting against God.)

If we would ask, "What is a normal person?" most people believe a normal person is someone similar to them self. If we would ask, "What is reality?, we would get people describing what they believe is reality. What they believe is reality is built from their experiences like; what they saw, touched, tasted, heard, etc.; what they have been taught; the environment they live in; etc. But all these things change between different people. Reality is seen differently between different people.

I talk about things that do not fit into other people's understanding of reality, so they believe that some of the things, that I say are reality, are wacky. But I see these people as living in a wacky *(not real)* reality; because I have lived, learned, and experienced different things in life than they have experienced. When I am talking about reality, I am talking about things that I found to be reality.

Reality is not something people can decide to change; genuine reality only comes **as is**. We take it as is, or we reject reality. We cannot change reality, but we can work on learning which things are truly reality.

Reality <u>is NOT</u> confined to what people believe is reality. Genuine reality is confined to what genuinely is: absolutely true and real unadulterated facts, etc. <u>Genuine</u> reality is an absolute, and is NOT subject to opinions or variations.

I have found in my lifetime that genuine reality is found in the genuine interpretation of the Bible. However, genuine reality is not found in all the things that people say the Bible is saying, but only in the genuine interpretation of the Bible.

Understanding the Bible is something we grow into understanding, and no one human being has the complete understanding. As I grow into understanding the Bible, I watch what I learned in the Bible play out in real life, this confirms to me my understanding to be correct.

Trying to learn *(piece together)* reality, without prayer and prayerfully using the Bible, will only take us into a misguided and incorrect reality. Putting our trust in a misguided and incorrect reality will end up causing us to deteriorate in many ways. However, the Bible must be understood correctly.

One thing some people fail to realize is: our life continues past our death, we do not go into non-existence. It is our body that dies, not our spirit. Some people brush this off, because they do not want to believe it, because they do not want to believe there is a Judgment Day.

When we try to proclaim the reality of God and the Bible, we run into a problem. People who do NOT love God, who do NOT choose/prefer to LOVE and OBEY God, are largely blinded by God from seeing and understanding many of the things of God *(things which are reality)*. God only opens the understanding of people who truly LOVE God, the rest of the people remain largely blind.

Many people have chosen to hold to an incorrect mindset,
which proclaims God does not exist,
thus they blind themselves from seeing genuine reality.

Many people do NOT see the things of God *(reality).* When people's eyes are not open to the things of God, human intellectual reasoning takes over, and human intellectual reasoning appears totally correct to them. When we talk about the things of God, they do not see them; sometimes they laugh because the things of God seen fictitious to them. They do NOT see or understand the things of God, so often they perceive the things of God as a product of mankind's imagination. The Bible says these people see the things of God as foolishness.

“the natural man receiveth not
the things of the Spirit of God:
for they are foolishness unto him” 1 Corinthians 2:12–14

“12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.
13 Which things also we speak, not in the words which man’s wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.
14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned.”

Many people tell themselves, and believe themselves, that there is no God;
they choose to resist the thought that there is a God.

People do not see/perceive that God truly exists, unless God reveals himself to them. God reveals himself to people who LOVE him, and have a right heart; and hides himself from people who decline to believe in God.

Jesus taught in parables, so people with a right heart for God would understand his teachings, and that people with a wrong heart would not understand them.

“Why speakest thou unto them in parables?”

“Because it is given unto you to know
the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven,
but to them it is not given”

“Therefore speak I to them in parables:
because they seeing see not;
and hearing they hear not,
neither do they understand”

“By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand;
and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive”

“For this people’s heart is waxed gross,
and *their* ears are dull of hearing,
and their eyes they have closed;” (note who closed their eyes)
“lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes,
and hear with *their* ears,

and should understand with *their* heart,
and should be converted,
and I should heal them"

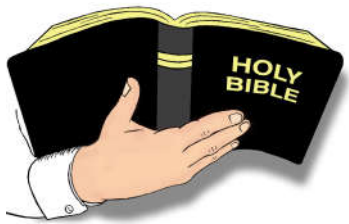
Now Read the Verses. *Note in verse 15:*
We understand the things of God with our heart). Matthew 13:10–15

"10 And the disciples came, and said unto him, Why speakest thou unto them in parables?
11 He answered and said unto them, Because it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given.
12 For whosoever hath, to him shall be given, and he shall have more abundance: but whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken away even that he hath.
13 Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.
14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:
15 For this people's heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them."

"Unto you it is given to know
the mysteries of the kingdom of God:
but to others in parables;
that seeing they might not see,
and hearing they might not understand" Luke 8:10

"10 And he said, Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God: but to others in parables; that seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand."

"thou hast hid these things
from the wise and prudent"
Matthew 11:25



"25 ¶ At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes."

The reason for our life on earth can be better understood, if we see it as a period of time that reveals our heart: revealing if we genuinely love God with our whole heart. What we choose/prefer to do in our current life reveals who we really are in our hearts. Do we wholeheartedly love God and God's righteousness, desiring to be good, holy, and righteous, or do we prefer and do things that are contrary to God's will?

Everybody follows their heart. If our heart loves God, we will love, follow, and obey God to the best of our ability. If our heart does NOT love God, we will do things our own way, even when it is defying God's instructions and the Bible. In the end, our heart will either lead us to Heaven through God's grace, through Jesus Christ, or take us to the eternal lake of fire through choosing the ways of sin *(defying God)*. We are either growing upwards in God, or falling downwards in sin. If our heart longs for God/good, we will want to eliminate all the evil things out of our life. If Our heart longs to follow sin, we are willfully opposing God, which is opposing good.

Everyone whose heart loves God,
desires to be good, holy, and righteous

Ask yourself: **"Do I desire to be good, holy, and righteous."**

Often, God often does things in ways contrary to the ways of human intellectual thinking, on purpose. Human intellectual reasoning would say the way to understand God is through research, observation, study, etc. In reality, the way to seeing and understanding God is through loving God. God opens the eyes of understanding of people who wholeheartedly love him, as they search for and do God's will. I find that trying to explain God to the majority of people is like trying to explain green to a person who has been totally blind from birth. People are largely blinded from seeing the things of God, because they do NOT want to love and obey God.

Many people cannot see genuine reality,
because they work to envision reality without God
and the genuine Spiritual world.

If we want to see and understand the reality of God, we need to genuinely desire to love and obey God, which results with us praying from the depth of our heart daily. We should prayerfully read and study the Bible daily *(start by reading the New Testament about a dozen times, we also need the Old Testament)*. We could start contacting God by praying something like the following: "God, if you are real, I want to love, obey, and understand you. God, I need your help." Note: Words alone do NOT impress God, God hears what our heart is saying. We must pray our prayers from the depth of our heart, or our praying is in vain.



Many people **do NOT want to see** the real unadulterated fact that God exists.
They will use their human intellectual reasoning in an attempt to reason God out of existence.

So God largely blinds them from seeing and understanding most of the things of God.

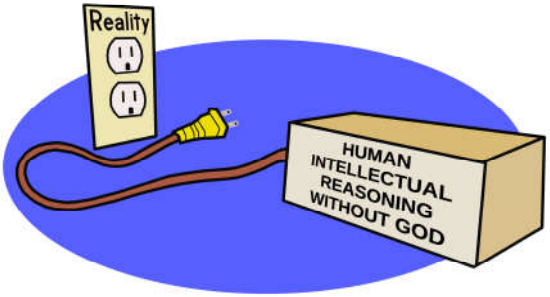
People, who do NOT want to believe in the existence of God, work hard to explain a reality without God. They will NOT accept creation, because that would be declaring that God exists. Many people will resort to a theory called evolution, and they will relentlessly strive to come up with everything and anything to explain-away creation by God. They avoid telling people things like: the order that the Bible says living things were created is basically the same order that people say living things evolved. When people show the anti-God crowd things that are contrary to the evolution theory, they aggressively push and fight to come

up with anything, attempting to show that God does NOT exist. I have heard that Darwinian himself recanted his theory (?) due to the fact that animals cannot reproduce outside of their family; example: cats can only reproduce in the cat family. The evolution people push hard and constantly to promote their one-sided picture about how living things came into existence. Their side is winning in the fact that evolution has taken over as the predominate thing being taught in schools. But it is a case of winning the battle, and losing the war. The anti-God people will lose big-time on Judgment Day. People believing that Judgment Day is NOT reality, will NOT stop Judgment Day from arriving.

Contrary to the thinking of most people,
I have found through the years of studying the Bible,
then watching what I studied, in the Bible,
playing out in real life;
This tells me that God and the Bible are factual.

People telling themselves that it does NOT matter what they do in life, by convincing themselves that everything is over when they die. They accept this reasoning, because they do NOT see, perceive, or detect anything past death. But this is NOT reality. Surprise!

We find **genuine reality in** the genuine interpretation of the Bible. Trying to piece together reality, without prayerfully using the Bible, will only take us into a misguided and false reality. Many people do NOT see genuine reality, because they work to envision reality without God, and the genuine Spiritual world.



Human Intellectual Reasoning is NOT perfect

(A large part of human intellectual reasoning is just opinions.)

Reality is solid, it only comes as is. Whereas, human intellectual reasoning is flexible; It can be shaped, steered, bent, and molded by people into almost anything they want. If people want to believe/disbelieve something, they can simply go to their intellectual reasoning and shape, steer, bend, and mold the disliked understanding into a preferred understanding.

Too many people put their trust in human intellectual reasoning. For some people It becomes their Bible. They believe, if things do NOT fit inside their human intellectual reasoning, those things are wrong, or they do NOT exist. This is because they cannot see, detect, or comprehend, anything outside of their human intellectual reasoning. There are things that do exist outside of their human intellectual reasoning; they just do NOT see them, or they choose NOT to see them. People, who try to confine reality to their intellectual reasoning, do NOT see/perceive the complete picture.

Too many organizations, that call themselves a church, make decisions concerning their church by using their personal human intellectual reasoning. Decisions concerning the Church are to be made by God; humans are to prayerfully search for those God made decisions through sincere prayer, fasting, prayerfully reading and studying the Bible, and by following the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. We need to accept and follow directions from God, and NOT make decisions for Christianity according to our own human preferences

If we are going to a church that is prayerfully and genuinely doing things God's way, a church which is genuinely connected with God, we still need to have a personal one on one connection with God to be able to grow into understanding and recognizing God; we need to receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(Read Acts 2:38)*.

Are the things in our church being done God's way? Church leaders need to remember what happened to Eli the priest, because he did NOT end the wickedness in the house of God.

Many of the things contained inside human intellectual reasoning are correct, but people have inserted an anti-God element into their reasoning. This anti-God reasoning throws their understanding of genuine reality astray. Instead of reasoning with an open mind, they repel God by choice, bending and molding their intellectual reasoning into an incorrect reality without God. They convince themselves that there is no God, because they do NOT see or detect God through conventional methods of discernment. The real problem is many people do NOT want God, and the things of God, to actually be real: especially Judgment Day and the eternal lake of fire. To their own harm, they strive to reason away and ignore the things concerning God and the Bible. Seeing reality without God is only seeing partial reality, and partial reality is not truly reality.

Some people do NOT want to believe in God, because they do NOT want to feel condemned for disobeying God. So they go to their human intellectual reasoning in an effort to reason God into nonexistence. They put their faith in human intellectual reasoning, and if anything is contrary to their intellectual reasoning, they believe it is wacky. They fail to realize it is NOT safe to lean on human intellectual reasoning and scholarly study, because human intellectual reasoning, and scholarly study, is always changing as we learn new things, and because it is often steered and bent by people to create an understanding that conforms to what the people want to believe. Human intellectual reasoning can be steered to justify, or condemn, just about anything.

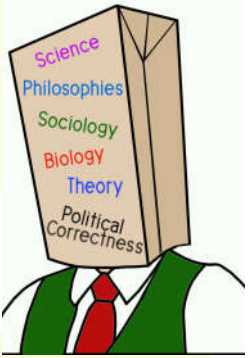
Too many people put their faith in the things they were taught. But many times, what they are actually doing is simply remembering what they were told, without having firsthand knowledge of what they were told being correct. Things are NOT facts, just because someone tells us they are facts. And people will often use what they were taught as facts, when reasoning things using their human intellect.

Many of the things we are taught are bent and steered to fit what the teacher wants us to believe.

Teachers often bend their teachings, sometimes to fit bias opinions.

Many people do NOT see genuine reality, because **too many people look for reality inside** all the things they have been taught *(told)*.

They need to realize that NOT everything they were told *(taught)* is reality.



Teachers often bend their teaching to fit their opinions; often exalting what they like, and what they desire to be truth, and push down and ignore what they do NOT like, regardless of the truth.

When teachers believe what they teach, the tone of their voice etc. helps them sway their students to believe their teachings. But other teachers teach things which are contrary to the first teacher's teachings, and these teachers also believe what they teach, and their voice also sways their students to accept what they are teaching.

Different people believe different things, partly because they were taught by different teachers. We need to accept what we were taught to believe is often one sided, and we do NOT fully understand what many other people believe and why they believe it. The problem is people have become one sided in their understanding, and they reject what others believe because it is contrary to the one sided things they were taught. Many people become so focused on human intellectual reasoning that they fail to see there are other areas in which people can obtain additional understanding.

On the other side, there are people who like to verbally fight *(argue)*. If they do NOT believe in God, they will throw everything and anything at us, declaring that there is no God. I believe you will find they are simply irritated, bias, and closed-minded. The problem is, they do NOT want God to be reality.

We know that we cannot accept everything we read or see on the internet, some of it is incorrect. Neither should we automatically accept everything we are taught in schools and elsewhere, some of it is incorrect. Some of the things I was taught in school has since been proven incorrect. We must NOT accept that everything our teachers teach us is totally correct, because they are often simply repeating what their teachers told *(taught)* them, and teachers do NOT know everything. I believe that most teachers teach what they believe is correct. NOT all teachers believe what they are teaching; some teachers simply teach what they are being paid to teach, even if it is incorrect. Some schools do NOT allow teachers to teach certain things that are true, because of the school's policies, and this can result with truth out of context.

As we hear new things, we store this information inside our memory banks. The problem is that NOT everything we were told is true, NOT everything in our memory banks is correct, NOT everything we believe is correct. Human intellectual reasoning and beliefs cannot be trusted as totally NOT flawed. We need to keep prayerfully reading the Bible and analyzing our memory banks, to weed out the things which are incorrect.

I hear people say, **"If there is a God, why doesn't he rid the world of all the evil?** Actually, this is what he is doing. But if God would put an end to all the evil in the world right now, with most people, it would include sentencing you to the eternal lake of fire right now. God is going to end evil/sin, but in the meantime, he is offering us a path, through Jesus Christ to repent *(turn to God)*, and be molded by God into righteous people, who strive to obey and please God, so we will NOT go to the eternal lake of fire. God wants us to come out of choosing to do evil/sin, before he destroys evil. Is our heart hand in hand with God, or with evil/sin? Do we really desire to become pure, holy, Godly, and righteous? Do we truly want to love God with our everything?

God is going to destroy evil. If I am partnered with evil, God is going to destroy me; I will be living forever in the eternal lake of fire, with no hope of salvation.

People get things backwards.
We do NOT clean up our self
to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ. We put on *(join)* Jesus Christ, so he will clean us up, as we cooperate with God.

If we genuinely love God,
God will reveal himself to us.
If we love evil, we will NOT be able
to fully see *(perceive)* or comprehend God.



Many people are anti-God, because God and the Bible condemn some of the things they are doing, and some of the things they want to do. Just talking about these things makes them feel uneasy, so they repel God and the Bible. They do NOT accept that the things God condemns are things that will end up destroying them.

When we get sick we go to a doctor, and normally the doctor will give us good advice. And when we need help, we go to someone who was schooled in the subject. But in the things of God, things are different. In the things of God, genuine pastors are taught by God. Going to Bible college can help, but unless the pastor is genuinely being taught by God as he studies, going to Bible college is worthless. In order to understand the things of God, God MUST give us the understanding as a gift, opening up our mind *(this is the only way to acquire genuine understanding about God)*. God often gives us this understanding, as we prayerfully, with a right heart, strive to study and learn the things of God. If we do not have a right heart towards God, God largely blinds us from understanding the things of God.

If we have a question about God, we need to go to a church that is genuinely wholeheartedly faithful to God and the teachings of the Bible, a church whose pastor has been genuinely taught by God, a church that has a strong and genuine connection to God. We also need to do our part: pray and worship God with a right heart daily, we need to prayerfully read from the New Testament daily *(we need the Old Testament too)*, we need to sincerely pray for God to lead us in the ways of God.

The only people who are able to give us genuine Godly advice are genuine Christians.

Going to a Bible School does NOT qualify someone to be a preacher/pastor. Neither does being ordained by, and having a license from, an organization that calls itself a church, qualify someone to be a preacher/pastor. God is the one who calls, teaches, anoints, and ordains a person to be a genuine preacher/pastor, with or without schooling. We need to attend a church where the pastor was genuinely called, taught, anointed, and ordained by God himself, someone who recognizes the Holy Bible is the word of God. In other words, we need to prayerfully search to find a church that is wholeheartedly faithful to God and the Bible.

How can we learn everything we are to do, and be, in our walk with Jesus Christ? God places his Spirit inside all genuine followers of Jesus Christ. God's Spirit will cause us to learn what we need to know, as we STRIVE to find and do God's will: praying, reading the Bible, etc. Our search for God's instructions must surpass <u>just seeking</u> to find, to spending ample time STRIVING to find God's will. The amount of effort we put into finding and doing God's will/instructions reflects how much we truly love and desire God. **Striving is a much stronger effort than seeking.**

Seeking versus Striving Luke 13:24

"24 Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able."

Genuine Christians do what God wants them to do. They are the children of God; they follow the leading of God's Spirit; they obey God, because they love God.

**“For as many as are led by the Spirit of God,
they are the sons of God”** Romans 8:14

“14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.”

**“I will put my spirit within you,
and cause you to walk in my statutes”** Ezekiel 36:26–27

“26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh.
27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and ye shall keep my judgments, and do *them*.”

**“I will put my laws into their mind,
and write them in their hearts”** Hebrews 8:10

“10 For this *is* the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:”

“thy law *is* within my heart” Psalms 40:8

“8 I delight to do thy will, O my God: yea, thy law *is* within my heart.”

**“Thy word have I hid in mine heart,
that I might not sin against thee ”** Psalms 119:10–12

“10 ¶ With my whole heart have I sought thee: O let me not wander from thy commandments.
11 ¶ Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.
12 ¶ Blessed *art* thou, O LORD: teach me thy statutes.”

God always knows the full intent of our heart.



God knows if we are striving to do his will, or if we are trying to slide around it. We need to study the things of God faithfully and earnestly. We do NOT want to be found guilty of ignoring the things of God, because God, and his ways, are NOT first in our heart.

In order to know God, we need God's Spirit living inside us. So let us obey God, and ask him for the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Remember to obey Acts 2:38.

"the Holy Ghost,
whom God hath given to them that obey him" Acts 5:32

"32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him."

"give the Holy Spirit
to them that ask him" Luke 11:13

"13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?"

If we have a hard time giving ourselves completely to God, we need to ask him for help; he will help us if our heart is sincere. We do NOT want to forget to praise Jesus Christ from the bottom of our heart daily. God is seeking people who genuinely worship him in spirit and in truth, so let us be one of them. Genuine praise gets God's attention.

"for the Father seeketh such to worship him" John 4:23

"23 But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him."

The extreme uttermost depth of our heart

When we do things concerning our God, we need to do them from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. We can repent, but with God we need to repent from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. We need to love and praise God from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. The same is true for all things concerning God.



A needed part of prayer is loving and worshiping God. Worshiping and loving God is telling God how great and wonderful he is, meaning it from the utmost depth of our heart. Worshiping and loving God gets God's attention, and draws God close to us.

During our life on earth, there are two paths which our heart will have to choose from:

(1) Giving our self completely to Jesus Christ, striving to follow him up the path of Godly righteousness, which leads to Heaven;

(2) Defying God, by choosing to continue doing sinful things**:** saying to myself, "I am going to do, what I want to do. I do NOT care what the Bible says." Continuing to follow sin takes us to the eternal lake of fire.

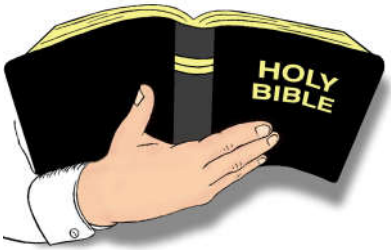
It is totally impossible to love God,
while we are choosing to continue our sinning.

When we are filled with God *(the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*, we are immediately changed. We will no longer do the sinful things we were doing. However, we do NOT become instantly perfect. An enormous change takes place in our life when we are filled with the Spirit of God. Then God will continue to grind and polish us, refining us deeper and deeper into righteousness, as we cooperate with him. This refining will continue the rest of our current life.

If we do NOT have the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside us after we repented and were baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ," the most likely problem is we have NOT completely given ourselves to Jesus Christ from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. Giving our self completely to Jesus Christ includes putting him first: ahead of everyone and everything, including our family, job, etc. Do NOT worry, putting Jesus Christ first, increases the love and care we give to our family, and everyone.

We need to draw closer to God with prayer and worship. We need to get down on our knees, with our hands lifted up towards God, and love, pray, and worship God from the depth of our heart, out loud *(this may be done in private)*, and convince God we want to give ourselves completely to him, and that we always want to do his will. We need to do this daily. *Note:* Jesus Christ is God in the flesh, the Father in *(inside)* the Son.

Obeying Christ's commandments is NOT mechanically obeying a set of written laws to the crossing of the t, and the dotting of the i.



Obedience is genuinely STRIVING to do the things God tells us to do with a right and honest heart; it is simply cooperating with God. We cooperate, thus we obey Christ's commandments. The commandments of God, and Christ's commandments are one and the same.

Christ's commandments are for our own well-being, making our life better, cleaner, happier, and more fulfilling. They are about loving God and mankind. They are about staying away from things that will harm and impair us. They are about doing good things that will keep us loving, healthy, and moral. They are about following Jesus Christ to Heaven. Genuine Christians soon discover that obeying Christ's commandments is for their own good/gain. We learn we win, when we obey God.

To know what is sin, we need to understand the formula for determining which things are good, and which things are evil *(sin)*.

In our courts of law, we use the words, **"legal"** & **"illegal"**. When talking about God's will, we use the words, **"good"** & **"evil"**. Illegal means doing contrary to our laws. Evil means doing things contrary to God's will. We learn God's will as we prayerfully read and study the Bible with a right heart daily.

GOoD

God is good. When we say God is good, we are NOT pointing towards good and saying "God is like that". Instead, we are saying good means like God *(Godly)*. We compare things to God to see if they are good. Good is determined when our actions parallel the actions of God. If an action is

like God's actions, it is good. Example: God loves and cares for people, so loving and caring for people is good. We need to understand, God is the standard *(the measuring rod)* for determining what is good. A good person is someone who is very concerned about doing the will of God, someone who strives to find and do God's will.

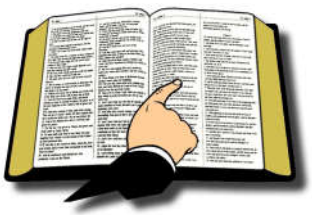
d EVIL

The devil is evil. Evil means like the devil. Our actions are evil when they parallel the actions of the devil. The devil fights God, doing and promoting what is contrary to God *(contrary to good)*; everything that is contrary to God is evil *(unGodly)*. Lying is evil, because it is the way of the devil; it is contrary to the ways of God. Lying, and all sinning, is actually acting like the devil. Evil is defying God *(rebelling against good)*, working against God. A person who is obeying evil is NOT concerned about doing the will of God *(which is being unconcerned about doing good)*. They tell themselves, "I am going to do whatever I want to do, even if it is contrary to the teachings of the Bible." Doing evil is doing things contrary to God *(contrary to the genuine teachings of the Bible)*.

We can do evil without being hurtful to someone, because doing evil means defying God, and we can defy God without being hurtful to someone.

Mankind does NOT decide what is good and evil. God's word, the Holy Bible, tells us what is good and evil; we simply choose to obey or defy God's instructions. We either decide to follow Jesus Christ in righteousness, or we decide to follow sin. Trying to justify sin does NOT make it acceptable; sin separates us from God.

Being good is doing/obeying the genuine teachings of the Bible. Prayerfully reading the Bible is where we find out what is good *(what is like God)* and what is evil *(what is contrary to God)*.



"Evil" simply means: doing things, having thoughts, and doing actions which are contrary to God and the Bible.

Words like evil, sin, iniquity, wickedness, immorality, abomination, etc. are words labeling things as being contrary to God's will *(contrary to good)*.

Everyone, whose heart loves God, desires to be holy, good, pure, righteous, and seeks after God; and finds sinning obnoxious. Everyone whose heart loves and desires sin, sees the holy, good, and righteous, as repulsive. What we feel, do, and say, reveals our heart, reveals who we are following: God or the devil *(sin)*.

SIN is doing things contrary to the will of God, including having sex outside of a marriage that is accepted by God.

All evil will end, and be destroyed.

We need to be sure we are NOT a part of the evil, which will be destroyed.



Which camp do we truly desire to live in:

▪ the evil camp of sin;

OR

▪ the good camp of Jesus Christ?

Our choice determines our eternal residence.

Inside the good camp of God lives: access to God, blessings of God, caring, clean conversations, faithfulness, forgiveness, gentleness, giving, good works, guidance by God, healthy thinking, helping, holiness, honesty, hope, hospitality, joy, kindness, humbleness of mind, liberty, long-suffering, love, meekness, mercy, obedience to God, patience, purity, rejoicing, righteousness, self-control, peace, sharing, temperance, thankfulness, truthfulness, understanding, etc.

Inside the evil camp of sin lives: abortion, adultery, backbiting, belittling, bitterness, cursing, covetousness, drunkenness, child molesting, fornication, disobedience, hating, evil music, getting even, gossip, hating people, homosexuality, idolatry, murders, immorality, rape, iniquity, lasciviousness, pornography, prostitution, pride, lust, rioting, reviling, lying, seductive dressing, non-spouse sex, ridiculing, stealing, vulgarity, witchcraft, selfishness, etc.



Choose/prefer the good/Godly life.

Do NOT let sin destroy you.

God Warns people about sin and its consequences

Read the following verses in different translations of the Bible, and compare.

"the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God"

"Be not deceived" 1 Corinthians 6:9–11

"9 ¶ Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,
10 Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.
11 And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God."

Verse 11 ***(above)*** tells us pre-Christians did some of these sins before they genuinely gave themselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way, before they were washed, sanctified, justified, and forgiven. So these are sins to repent from.

WOE unto people who call any of God's ways "evil", AND/OR call things which are contrary to God "good".

"Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil" Isaiah 5:20

"20 Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness; that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!"

"they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God" Galatians 5:19–21

"19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are *these*; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness,
20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,
21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told *you* in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God."

"For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men" Romans 1:18

"18 For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness;"

“no whoremonger,
nor unclean person,
nor covetous man,
who is an idolater,
hath any inheritance in
the kingdom of Christ and of God” Ephesians 5:5



“5 For this ye know, that no whoremonger, nor unclean person, nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.”

“I never knew you: depart from me,
ye that work iniquity” Matthew 7:23

“23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity.”

“all things that offend,
and them which do iniquity”

“shall cast them into a furnace of fire:
there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth” Matthew 13:40–42

“40 As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world.
41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;
42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.”

Some people think they did too much sinning; they think they are too filthy to give themselves to God. They cannot imagine God forgiving them, because they did so many evil things. But in reality, if they sincerely love and want God, the door of salvation is open to them. People who are forgiven much *(big-time)* often love God much *(big-time)*. Sometimes the evilest sinners, who are genuinely converted, become the best Christians.

“to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little” Luke 7:47

“47 Wherefore I say unto thee, Her sins, which are many, are forgiven; for she loved much: but to whom little is forgiven, *the same* loveth little.”

Sin ALWAYS Destroys/Deteriorates

The word sin means anti-good *(anti-God)*. Sin always destroys/deteriorates the person, country, etc. Everything that is anti-God *(anti-good)* destroys and deteriorates.

God made everything good. But when sin came on the scene in the garden of Eden, things started falling downhill and deteriorating. Sin brought new things into our world: death; health problems; hate; rape; fornication; murder; adultery; lying; prostitution; getting even; vulgarity; homosexuality; child molesting; immorality; iniquity; evil music; lust; gossip; non-spouse sex; stealing; abortion; wrath; pornography; bitterness; witchcraft; belittling; pride; selfishness; reviling; seductive dressing; drunkenness; rioting; covetousness; disobedience; idolatry; lasciviousness; etc.

Why do people want to swim in the cesspools of evil, when they may swim in clean/clear/pure waters of love, free of charge? Why do people want to abuse/injure themselves, so they can be like *(fit in with, follow)* worldly people who are headed for the eternal lake of fire? Why do people decline to follow Jesus Christ to Heaven. Why do they allow sin to destroy them?

Satan paints a facade, falsely painting sin to appear attractive, alluring, charming, mouth-watering, etc., attempting to get people to lust and run after sin. When people start to follow sin, they may think they are having a joyride. But in time sin destroys them, causing them mental pain, emptiness, etc. In the end, sin takes them to the eternal lake of fire.

Through Jesus Christ people may exit sin, and their life can be changed to good, holy, pure, and complete.

Illustration: An antique dealer convinced Ellen to trade her antique dishes for a brand-new set. He bought Ellen's dishes at a super bargain price. He knew her dishes would sell immediately for a few thousand dollars. He took advantage of Ellen, using her lack of knowledge for his own gain. He had absolutely no concern for Ellen; he just used her for his own purpose.

Likewise: Satan is not concerned about anyone; he just uses people to serve his own purpose. Satan takes advantage of people's lack of understanding. He gains control of people by deceiving and alluring them into thinking sinning is a better life. He uses them for his own purpose in his war against God. Satan is not concerned he is pulling people from a life of love and truth, taking them to a place of hate and deception. If they choose/prefer to stay there, they will end up in the eternal lake of fire.

Sin is a facade. It might appear appealing from the front, but once you have entered it, sin will destroy you.

Sin will take you where you do not want to go.

Some people think they are allowed to do a little bit of sinning, because nobody is perfect. This is totally incorrect; nobody is allowed to choose to sin. We must NOT tempt /test God. Choosing to sin, and trusting God to forgive us, is called temping/testing God.

If we continue choosing to sin,
we are NOT properly connected to God yet;
our heart is NOT in God.

Illustration: Once a week a man had sex with a woman who was NOT his wife. He knew it was a sin, so as soon as he got home he would immediately get down on his knees and ask God to forgive him. The problem was he intended to do it again next week.

If we are planning to sin again, we did NOT repent. A genuine repented person has wholeheartedly decided NOT to sin again, and he will wholeheartedly strive to fulfill his decision. It is impossible to be a repented person who willfully chooses/prefers to continue sinning. If we continue choosing to disobey Jesus Christ, we are rejecting him as our Lord *(as the one we obey)*. If we tell God we are sorry, when we are NOT sorry, we would be lying to God.

Genuine believers do NOT make room for sinning; they follow the leading of the Spirit of God. God's Spirit always leads people away from sinning. If a genuine Christian sins, the Holy Ghost/Spirit who is living inside him will cause him to feel extremely condemned; he needs to repent from the extreme uttermost depth of his heart.

Sin is always addictive.



Sin is always addictive *(I explain this addiction as being handcuffed to sin)*.

Everyone is, or was, handcuffed to sin. Sin, being stronger than the person, drags the person into sinful activity.

Why do unrighteous people do unrighteous things? They are handcuffed to sin, and sin is pulling them into unrighteousness. They bow down to sin, because they do NOT have Almighty God dwelling inside them.

All sin is addictive. Some people <u>think</u> that they are so addicted to their sinning that it is impossible to change. Their sinning controls them, dragging them where they do not want to go. However, through Jesus Christ we can get the handcuffs removed.

How can I get released from sin's handcuffs?

<u>The only way</u> we can get sin's handcuffs removed is through Jesus Christ, and the Spirit of God dwelling inside us.

We need to believe Jesus Christ is the Son of God, and accept him as our personal Lord *(as the one we obey)*. We must constantly love God with ALL our heart, soul, mind, and strength. We need to obey the instructions given by St. Peter on the first day of the Church *(Acts 2:38)*, including receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

The instructions *(This is how we get God involved in exiting our sinning.)*

(The "Promise" is the Holy Ghost/Spirit) Acts 2:38–39

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

When we try to exit sin on our own *(without God)*, it is like a new year's resolution to lose weight; we work at it for a while, but in time we revert back to sinning again. Some people who were trying to get released from sin said they went to churches and did as they were instructed, but it did not work. If it did not work, the instructions were probably incorrect, or they were not genuinely followed. Just because an organization calls itself a church, does not mean God is with them. Just because people tell us what to do, does not mean they *(the pastor/priest, a church, an individual, etc.)* understands the facts/truth, and knows what to tell us to do. When someone tells us something, we need to always prayerfully check it with the Bible. If our heart is right, God will reveal to us what we need to know, as we prayerfully strive to find God's will in the Bible.

When we put on *(join)* Jesus Christ the Bible way, we will receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(God entering us)*. Now with God continually dwelling inside of us, molding us, God will cause us to grow out of our sinning, as we cooperate with God. We get released from sin's handcuffs when/after we genuinely receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit, when Almighty God himself is genuinely dwelling inside of us, molding us, as we are following the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Being released from sin is accomplished with God truly living/dwelling inside us, working on us. Exiting sin is NOT accomplished by mankind through programs, education, or by convincing sinners they need to stop sinning. We cannot exit our sinning and grow into righteousness without God living inside of us.

When God enters us, the addiction to sin is broken *(the handcuffs are broken)*, because God is bigger and stronger than sin. Being freed from sin's handcuffs, we are free to choose the ways of God, or to return to the handcuffs of sin.

We have liberty in Jesus Christ, because we are no longer handcuffed to sin. Christ fulfilled the law, ending the law of Moses. This liberty does NOT allow us to do anything contrary to the will of God, but it is a freedom which allows us to follow/obey Jesus Christ, without carrying excessive burdensome weights.

With the handcuffs removed, we have the freedom to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of Godliness, as he leads, teaches, and molds us into perfection in God. As we cooperate with God, he will be continually teaching us what is good and what is sin. He will tell us how sin will utterly destroy us, if we choose/prefer to follow sin.

Even though we are freed from sin's handcuffs, sin will speak to us. Sin woos the freed individual to return to the handcuffs, and the destruction. Sin works very hard to make destructive things appear attractive, alluring, charming, mouth watering, etc., crying "Return, return, return to your sinning". Sin works very hard at making good and righteous things appear undesirable. However, being freed from sin's handcuffs, we are free to ignore sin's wooing, and we are free to follow Jesus Christ up the path of righteousness. Whoever we choose to obey is our lord, and is our eternal destination. We can follow/obey God, and go to Heaven; or we can follow/obey sin, and go to the eternal lake of fire.

It seems strange people think they are free, when they are under the dictate of sin. Sin tells them they are free: free to reject doing things that are good for them; free to harm others for their own gain; free to curse; free to put down other people; free to be deceptive, free to be mean and nasty; free to have unGodly sex; free to be evil; etc.

It seems strange people reject to be freed from sin's hand-cuffs. They reject the great liberty found in Jesus Christ: liberty *(freedom)* to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. They reject living their life in the good, holy, loving, clean, and Godly, side of life.

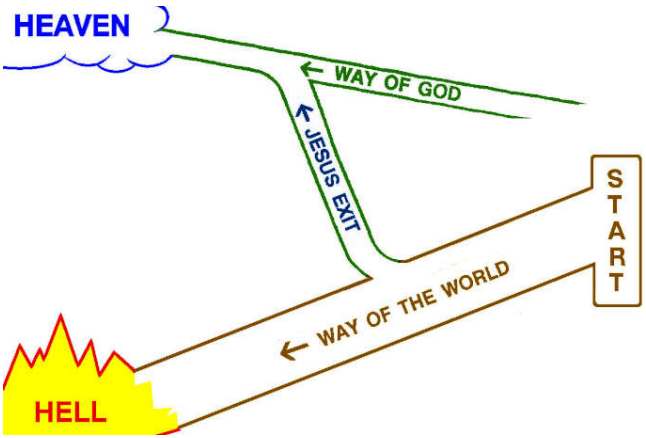
The extreme uttermost depth of our heart

When we do things concerning God, we need to do them from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. We can repent, but with God we need to repent from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. We need to love and praise God from the extreme uttermost depth of our heart. The same is true for all things concerning God.

Sin's eternal consequence, the eternal lake of fire, is reality. Judgment Day will absolutely arrive. NOT believing in Judgment Day will NOT stop it from arriving, just as NOT believing in gravity will NOT keep you from falling. Are you ready for your eternity? It is coming! Get your pardon through Jesus Christ, before it is too late. People who believe I am wrong, will know otherwise when they find themselves waiting for their turn on Judgment Day.

It is totally impossible to love God, while we are choosing to continue our sinning. It is totally impossible to follow both God and sin. If we continue choosing to obey sin, we are still wearing sin's handcuffs, and we are NOT following the Spirit of God. People, who are handcuffed to sin do what sin dictates: they obey sin; they are the servants of sin.

The Jesus Exit



If we DECLINE to take the Jesus exit, it is because our love for sinning is greater than our love for God; like the man who did NOT want to become a Christian, because he would have to give up looking at pornography. It is impossible to remain on the road we exited; we cannot be traveling the way of the world and the Jesus exit at the same time. We cannot be a burglar and a Christian at the same time. We cannot be a liar/deceiver and a Christian at the same time. We cannot be a homosexual and a Christian at the same time. We cannot be a fornicator and a Christian at the same time; etc. Continuing to willfully choose to do things contrary to the teachings of the Bible, declares that we have NOT

yet taken the Jesus exit, and we are still on “the way of the world”, headed for the horrific destination. Nobody is perfect. However, the act of willfully choosing to continue defying God disqualifies us as a Christian. Many people on the way of the world find God’s ways repulsive, because the ways of God fight against the ways of the world.

I believe the Bible teaches us NOT to condemn sinners; because that would make us hypocrites; because every one of us have sinned, and we are still not perfect. Just because we do NOT tell sinners that they are sinning, will not keep sinners from going to the eternal lake of fire; sinners need to know that they are sinning, and that they can repent of their sinning. To avoid the eternal lake of fire, sinners need to give themselves completely to Jesus Christ the Bible way. They are to obey Acts 2:38, repent *(stop choosing to sin, and start striving to obey God in all things)*, They need to receive the Spirit of God, and always strive to follow the leading of God’s Spirit.

If we genuinely choose to exit sin, to become holy, good, and righteous, by taking the Jesus exit, our heart will be craving the things of God. When we enter the Jesus exit we will stop choosing to sin, but we will find we are NOT perfect yet. When we enter the Jesus exit, we go from choosing to do wrong, to striving *(a very strong effort)* to always do right. However, as we are genuinely traveling the exit, the Spirit of God will be perfecting us into righteousness as we strive to follow Jesus Christ’s instructions. When we are on the Jesus exit, we will be able to exit sins that were too strong for us to exit while we were living on “the way of the world”. As we walk with God, the power of God will give us the needed strength and ability to exit them: this power is NOT available to people living on “the way of the world”. Genuine Christians will continue to grow into righteousness the rest of their life on earth. A genuine Christian has a heart that greatly loves and desires to please God, a heart that strives to be holy, good, and righteous. After our life on earth is over, God will place us in a perfect environment, where we can actually be perfectly holy, pure, good, and righteous, because the temptations, pressures, and pushes inside of us to do wrong will NOT exist in Heaven.

I do NOT condemn anybody. I simply do NOT want anybody to go to the eternal lake of fire. When I talk about sinners going to the eternal lake of fire, I am saying, "Wake up! Open your eyes! Turn around! You are going the wrong way! There is horrific danger ahead! You are walking towards the eternal lake of fire!" I want everybody to travel the Jesus exit, and go to Heaven.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

9

Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, includes accepting him as our Lord.

Accepting Jesus Christ as our "Lord" means: accepting Christ as our leader, the one we will obey.

Following Jesus Christ means following his instructions.

Is the Belief, Saved by Grace, No Works Necessary, Biblically Correct?

"No works necessary" can be very misleading, because some people can think it is saying, "We do not have to do anything." It should be said, "No works necessary to earn, or to help earn, our salvation." There are things we need to do that are not tied to earning *(paying for)* our salvation.

I hear some people teaching that all we need to do to go to Heaven is believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and put our faith in Jesus Christ, and teach that we are not required to obey anything. They believe that saying we need to obey something is declaring that Jesus Christ's shed blood is insufficient by it self. They try to interpret all necessary obedience as working to earn, or helping to earn, our salvation.

Salvation is something that we cannot earn, it is not earnable.

True, we cannot help earn our salvation by doing works, but this does not eliminate the necessity to do the works. We do the works, because we love, honor, respect, and obey God, as God. We do not want to be found declining to obey God.

Jesus Christ instructs us that believers are to be baptized.

Obeying Christ is loving God, and treating God, as God.

Jesus Christ, by shedding his blood at Calvary, paid the full price for our salvation. We are offered salvation by God's grace, free of charge. We accept the free gift of our salvation by accepting Jesus Christ as our Lord and Savior. Accepting Jesus Christ as our Lord means we are accepting him as our leader, the one that we are determined to love, follow, and obey: putting our belief and faith in Jesus Christ.

We cannot work and earn our salvation.

"*it is* the gift of God" Ephesians 2:8–9

"8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: *it is* the gift of God:
9 Not of works, lest any man should boast."

Obeying Christ's instructions is not the "works" talked about in Ephesians 2:9.

There are many things we need to do *(be striving to do,)* they are just not part of an earning process of earning our way into Heaven; nevertheless, there are still things which need to be done, simply because genuine Christians love and obey God. If we think we can have faith in Jesus Christ, and be right in the sight of God, while we willfully choose to continue declining/rejecting to obey Jesus Christ, our thinking is amiss. We are baptized into Christ because baptism is a command from Jesus Christ.

Striving to obey Jesus Christ does not earn, but it does reveal our true heart; it reveals who we are following. Willfully continuing to decline to obey Christ's instructions reveals we are not following *(obeying)* Jesus Christ *(we are not connected to Jesus Christ yet)*.

Jesus Christ is the door; We enter by being **"baptized into"** Jesus Christ. *(read Acts 2:38, about being baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ")*

Be sure to note the words,
"baptized into Christ", and, **"put on Christ"** Galatians 3:27

"27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ."

When we get dressed, we put on our clothes; when we get baptized, we are putting on Jesus Christ. *(above verse).*

Look up the words, "put on", in a New Testament Word Study Dictionary and confirm that the words, **"put on"** are paralleled to putting on clothing.

Our Lord is whoever we obey!
If Jesus Christ is our Lord, we will be striving to obey him.

"Know ye not,
that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey,
his servants ye are to whom ye obey" Romans 6:16

"16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?"

Loving and following Jesus Christ includes striving to always obey him in everything.

"He that saith, I know him,
and keepeth not his commandments,
is a liar, and the truth is not in him"

Note the word, "if", in verse 3. 1 John 2:3–5

"3 ¶ And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.
4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.
5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him."

Willfully continuing to disobey Jesus Christ reveals we do not love Jesus Christ.

"He that loveth me not
keepeth not my sayings" John 14:24

"24 He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father's which sent me."

Always striving to obey Jesus Christ
is simply a part of being a genuine Christian.

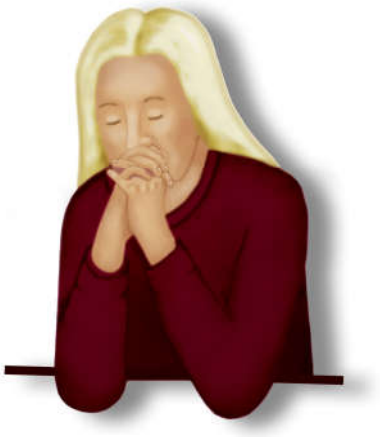
The Bible is a book of truths *(plural)*. We can get out of Biblical context by separating one Biblical truth from the other truths of the Bible. Just as we can read words out of context and comprehend things incorrectly, we can separate one Bible truth, from the other Bible truths, and end up with an incorrect belief.

Example: Truth one, without truth two, can lead to wrong conclusions. Truth One does not cross out *(eliminate)* Truth Two.

TRUTH ONE – We are saved by God's grace through Christ's shed blood, and NOT by our works *(our efforts, being good, holy, righteous, etc.)*. Our "works" do not earn or help earn our way into Heaven. Our "works" do not make us worthy enough for Heaven.

TRUTH TWO – Genuine Christians always strive to obey Jesus Christ's commandments, in all things, from the depth of their heart, including the things some people call "works".

When we understand correctly, all the truths in the Bible will be in harmony.



Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, includes accepting him as our Lord *(accepting Christ as our leader, the one we obey)*. A Lord is someone who has authority over others. He tells the people in his kingdom what to do, and he has the responsibility to care for them.

If we accept Jesus Christ as our personal Lord, we are voluntarily accepting him as the one we will obey, and as the one who will care for us. Our obedience to him, or our disobedience to him, reveals if we have actually accepted him as our Lord *(as the one we obey)*.

If Jesus Christ is our Lord, we will always strive, with all our heart, to do all the things he tells us to do. Are we obeying Christ if we are declining/refusing to obey his command to be baptized.

Calling Jesus Christ "Lord," and willfully declining to obey him, are contrary to each other. So **why** do you call Christ "**Lord",** if he is not your Lord?

"why call ye me, Lord, Lord,
and do not the things which I say?" Luke 6:46

"46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?"

We obey Jesus Christ because we want to obey him, because we belong to him, because we greatly love him, and because he is our Lord. Obeying Jesus Christ is treating God, as God.

"Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord,
shall enter into the kingdom of heaven;
but he that doeth" Matthew 7:21

"21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven."

We need to understand the Bible's definition of believing on the Lord Jesus Christ includes accepting him as our Lord *(as the one we obey, which involves doing many things)*, and it also includes accepting the complete realm of genuine Christianity. If we truly believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, our belief will compel us to strive to obey all the things of God, including baptism. Obeying Christ is treating God, as God.

Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, which includes accepting him as our **Lord** *(as the one we obey*), is the starting point, not the "all done" point, of walking with Jesus Christ to Heaven. There is no such thing as believing on the Lord Jesus Christ, then choosing to sit down and do nothing.

We connect to God with our heart, not with our "works".
However, if our heart is properly connected to God,
our heart will compel us to do the "works".

Doing the **"works"** is <u>not</u> paired
to earning our way into Heaven.
Doing the **"works"** is paired
to loving and obeying God.

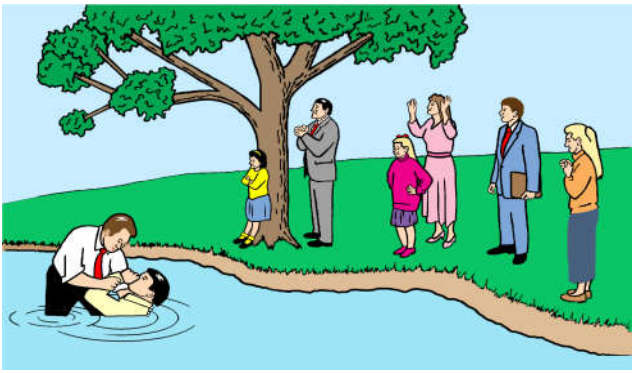
Water baptism is a command from Jesus Christ, given in the Great Commission. This is why we need to be baptized.

Water baptism is not about the water *(there is no power in the water)*; however, water is used in the baptism ceremony. Water baptism is the ceremony part for PUTTING ON Jesus Christ; we are baptized INTO Christ for the remission of our sins. However, there is more to entering Jesus Christ than water baptism; baptism is one part: the ceremony part. When a genuinely repented person is baptized the Bible way, he comes up out of the water with his sins forgiven, and will receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

When the Bible talks about baptism washing away our sins, it is NOT talking about the water washing our sins away. We are baptized into Christ for the remission of sins, this is sometimes called washing our sins away. Our sins are forgiven because we became a genuine part of the body of Christ, by being baptized INTO Christ.



We are baptized <u>into</u> *(join)* Jesus Christ for the remission of our sins. We need to understand that **remission** of our sins is more than just being forgiven; it is also about God continuing to remove us out of our sinning, as we cooperate with God. The rest of our lives, God will be causing us to grow more and more out of our sinning as we follow the leading/guiding of God's Spirit.



Remission of sins also includes
turning us away from our sinning

**"turning away every one of you
from his iniquities"** Acts 3:26

"26 Unto you first God, having raised up his Son Jesus, sent him to bless you, in turning away every one of you from his iniquities."

Entering the way of Jesus Christ *(joining Jesus Christ)* is symbolic of Christ's death, burial, and resurrection. Baptism is a moment of being buried in water, being symbolic of Christ's burial.

Doing, what Christ instructs me to do, is a product stemming/flowing from loving, honoring, and respecting God, by saying "yes" when he tells me to do them. God did so much for me; I am glad to obey him without receiving any additional benefits.

Some people think they will go to Heaven if they live a decent life, and do lots of good things; but this is not how it works. We cannot earn, or help earn, our admission into Heaven by doing good works; we cannot make ourselves good or holy enough to deserve Heaven. But, God loves us, and he made a way for us to go to Heaven through Jesus Christ.

When we have genuinely given our self to Jesus Christ the Bible way, God will fill us *(Christ's followers)* with the Holy Ghost/Spirit. God will mold us into good, holy, righteous, and merciful people, as we cooperate with God, who wholeheartedly love and obey God, doing Godly works of righteousness.

If we think we are in God, but we are not continually growing further into being good and righteous, something is wrong

Loving God, and obeying God, are welded together.

We cannot have one without the other.



"If ye love me,
keep my commandments" John 14:15

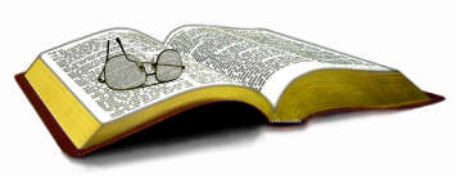
"15 ¶ If ye love me, keep my commandments."

"For this is the love of God,
that we keep his commandments" 1 John 5:2–3

"2 By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God, and keep his commandments.
3 For this is the love of God, that we keep his commandments: and his commandments are not grievous."

"this is love,
that we walk after his commandments" 2 John 1:6

"6 And this is love, that we walk after his commandments. This is the commandment, That, as ye have heard from the beginning, ye should walk in it."



"he became the author of eternal salvation
unto all them that obey him" Hebrews 5:9

"9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;"

"to love him, and to serve the LORD thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul" (with our all) Deuteronomy 10:12

"12 ¶ And now, Israel, what doth the LORD thy God require of thee, but to fear the LORD thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the LORD thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,"

“mercy for them that love him
and observe his commandments” Nehemiah 1:5

“5 ¶ And said, I beseech thee, O LORD God of heaven, the great and terrible God, that keepeth covenant and mercy for them that love him and observe his commandments:”

“this is love,
that we walk after his commandments” 2 John 1:6

“6 And this is love, that we walk after his commandments. This is the commandment, That, as ye have heard from the beginning, ye should walk in it.”

“thou shalt love the Lord thy God
with all thy heart,
and with all thy soul,” (with our all)
“and with all thy mind,
and with all thy strength:
this *is* the first commandment” Mark 12:29–30

“29 And Jesus answered him, The first of all the commandments *is*, Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord:
30 And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this *is* the first commandment.”

“If ye keep my commandments,
ye shall abide in my love” John 15:10

“10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father’s commandments, and abide in his love.”

“He that loveth me not
keepeth not my sayings” John 14:24

“24 He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings: and the word which ye hear is not mine, but the Father’s which sent me.”

“The LORD preserveth all them
that love him” Psalms 145:20

“20 The LORD preserveth all them that love him: but all the wicked will he destroy.”

“and mercy to them that love him” Daniel 9:4

“4 ¶ And I prayed unto the LORD my God, and made my confession, and said, O Lord, the great and dreadful God, keeping the covenant and mercy to them that love him, and to them that keep his commandments;”

“the crown of life,
which the Lord hath promised
to them that love him” James 1:12

“12 Blessed *is* the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love him.”

“mercy with them that love him
and keep his commandments”

“he will not be slack to him that hateth him,
he will repay him to his face” Deuteronomy 7:9–10

“9 Know therefore that the LORD thy God, he *is* God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations;
10 And repayeth them that hate him to their face, to destroy them: he will not be slack to him that hateth him, he will repay him to his face.”

“the kingdom which he hath promised
to them that love him” James 2:5

“5 Hearken, my beloved brethren, Hath not God chosen the poor of this world rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which he hath promised to them that love him?”

We do not earn our way into Heaven by doing good things, by striving to be good and holy, etc. This is not how things work. In fact we are not capable, by our self, of genuinely molding our self into these things. We need the Holy Ghost/Spirit to genuinely mold us into these things as we cooperate with God. How do we receive the Holy Ghost /Spirit?

“and ye shall receive
the gift of the Holy Ghost” Acts 2:38--39

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call.”

Thank God for grace.

Genuine belief on the Lord Jesus Christ
always causes us to strive to do all the “works”
instituted by God.

If we do nothing but believe,
we do not have the proper kind of belief.

If we do nothing but have faith,
we do not have the proper kind of faith.

Genuine love, belief, and faith in Christ,
always causes people to strive to obey God
in everything, including Baptism.

Some people do not get baptized, because they do not want to put their faith in their “works,” instead of putting their faith in Christ. But how is declining to obey Jesus Christ putting our faith in Jesus Christ? We are commanded by Jesus Christ to be baptized.

I do not find anywhere in the Bible where the Bible even hints that baptism is included in the “works” talked about in Ephesians 2:9. Baptism is not a part of earning our way into Heaven, it is about loving, obeying, and respecting God by submitting ourselves to following Christ’s instructions. We put our faith in Christ by obeying him, not by declining to obey him. If we are declining to obey what Christ instructs us to do *(including water baptism)* this reveals there is something wrong with our faith and our connections to God. Our genuine love for God will cause us to strive to obey God in all things, including doing all the “works” that Christ instructs us to do. We get baptized because Christ *(our Lord)* instructs us to be baptized *(in the Great Commission).*

Illustration: There was a teenage boy whose parents loved him very much. When he made mistakes, his parents would forgive him, and use the instances to try to teach him to do better.

One day the teenager was playing with his friends. He told his friends that he did not have to be concerned about obeying his parents. He said, "My parents will not punish me, because my parents love me. They will not punish me; they will just love and forgive me."

Likewise: Some people think that they do not have to be concerned about striving to obey the commandments of God. They choose to believe that they are free to disobey God, because God will always love and forgive them. Choosing to disobey, and trusting God to forgive us, is called tempting/testing God.

Reality: Genuine Christians love God, and they are led by the Spirit of God; who puts a great desire in their heart to always do God's will, and they will strive to do God's will.

If we continue to willfully disobey God, we are not connected to God yet; we are commanded to repent from *(stop, cease)* our willful disobedience, and strive to always obey God in all things.

It is incorrect to say, "I do not have to do the Lord's will, if I call the Lord's will "works".

Our obedience or disobedience reveals if our heart is in God. Not cooperating with Jesus Christ *(choosing to disobey him)* is rebelling against God. Jesus Christ instructs us to repent, and to be baptized, so we cooperate. How intensely we strive to obey and cooperate with Jesus Christ reveals how much we truly love God.

Cooperating with God is not work or bondage; it is not a weight around our neck. Jesus Christ's commandments are for our well-being: making our life better, cleaner, happier, and more fulfilling *(even if we are being persecuted)*.

We are to love God with our all. If we love God, we will strive to obey him, even if we call his instructions "works." If we do not strive to obey God, we do not properly love God.

After we believe the gospel about Jesus Christ, and desire to follow him with all our heart, we are to put on *(join)* our self to Jesus Christ, by repenting, being baptized into Christ, and receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

Putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ in faith and baptism can only be accomplished by doing it from the depth of our heart. We do not put on Christ by merely going through the motions, saying the right words, etc. If our heart is not truly involved in our actions towards God, our actions are in vain.

Putting on Christ is joining our self to Christ. We put on Jesus Christ in baptism *(comparing it to putting on a garment)*; now we wear Jesus Christ in our heart.

Illustration: **Nancy gave birth** to a baby boy, and she asked her doctor, "How can I be a LOVING mother?" So the doctor gave her a list of things LOVING mothers do for their new born babies: change their diapers; feed them every two hours; keep them warm and clean; etc.

A friend told Nancy, "Doing all the things that you have on your check list does not make you a LOVING mother. A cold hearted babysitter could do all these things, and not love the child at all. Love is a feeling a mother has for her child, not physical movements."

So the mother did not feed her baby. She left him shivering all day long in a filthy overflowing diaper. She told herself she was a LOVING mother, because she had feelings for the child. She figured doing the things the doctor said fell under the label "works"; and "works" *(physical movements)* is not love; love is having feelings for the child.

Just doing the "works" of providing care for her baby will not make Nancy a LOVING mother. On the other hand, Nancy cannot be a LOVING mother unless her love for her child is driving her to strive to do all the "works" of caring for her baby. It is impossible for her to be a LOVING mother while she is willfully providing unacceptable/inadequate care for her child. If Nancy is a LOVING mother, her love for her baby will compel her to see that her child has proper care. Genuine love always causes the actions of love.

Likewise: Simply doing the "works," *(and checking them off the check list)* of becoming and being a Christian, will not make us a genuine Christian.

On the other hand,
we cannot be a genuine Christian
without OUR LOVE and desire for God
causing us to strive to do
all the "WORKS" of
becoming and being a genuine Christian.

In being a Christian, there are things we need to do, but it is not a checklist. Love causes the actions of love, and our love and desire for Christ will cause us to strive to do all the things of being a Christian. Our actions do not earn, they reveal who we are, and to whom we belong.

Nobody has the authority to tell people they do not have to obey Jesus Christ's commands, which includes baptism.

We must not play lawyer, and look at the thief on the cross and say it sets a precedent; we do not parallel the thief on the cross: **(1)** The thief was dying on a cross; there was no way for him to get down off the cross and be baptized. The thief on the cross did not refuse or decline to obey Jesus Christ, but if we say "no" to Jesus Christ's commandment to be baptized, we are refusing, declining, to obey Christ. **(2)** The event of the thief on the cross happened under the dispensation of the Law, and we live under the dispensation of Grace. *(The dispensation of the Law ended with Christ's death on the cross. Christ was still alive, when the event of the thief on the cross took place)*.

Some people think tempting/testing God is having faith. Deliberately putting our self in harm's way, deliberately jumping off the temple, and putting our faith in God to catch us, is called tempting/testing God. Choosing to sin *(choosing not to obey God)* and trusting God to forgive us is tempting/testing God. It is not smart to tempt/test God.

"Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God" Matthew 4:5–7

"5 Then the devil taketh him up into the holy city, and setteth him on a pinnacle of the temple,

6 And saith unto him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in *their* hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone.
7 Jesus said unto him, It is written again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God."

We do NOT work at being good, holy, and righteous, so God will accept us; it does not work that way. Rather, we give ourselves completely to Jesus Christ, just as we are. After we join Jesus Christ the Bible way *(Acts 2:38),* God enters us, and dwells inside of us. God does not just sit inside us; he works at molding us into being good, holy, and righteous, as we cooperate with God.

Doing and being good does not help us earn our way into Heaven, but it can get God's attention, and God might show us the way to Heaven like he did for Cornelius. God heard Cornelius's prayers, took notice of his good works, and sent St. Peter to instruct Cornelius concerning salvation through Jesus Christ. Doing good is never in vain.

"he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do" Acts 10:1–6

"1 ¶ There was a certain man in Caesarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian *band*,
2 *A* devout *man*, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God alway.
3 He saw in a vision evidently about the ninth hour of the day an angel of God coming in to him, and saying unto him, Cornelius.
4 And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said unto him, Thy prayers and thine alms are come up for a memorial before God.
5 And now send men to Joppa, and call for *one* Simon, whose surname is Peter:
6 He lodgeth with one Simon a tanner, whose house is by the sea side: he shall tell thee what thou oughtest to do."

We hear about God's grace, that Jesus Christ died to pay the penalty *(death)* for our sins, and he did. Christ's death on the cross created a path for us to exit a life of continually choosing to sin *(defying God)*; unto the path of always striving to obey Jesus Christ, growing up the path of God into Godly righteousness. God's grace is for the people who choose to love God, and they will always strive to follow/obey God.

How hard we strive to follow/obey God, reveals how much we love God. God's grace takes us from being condemned, on our way to the eternal lake of fire, without hope of a pardon, to being fully pardoned, forgiven, and on our way to Heaven. This is a result of God's love and compassion for us, by sending his son to die in our place. We reject God by continuing to choose to defy God, which is refusing to repent. Every person needs to repent *(turn from choosing to sin)*.

"except ye repent,
ye shall all likewise perish" Luke 13:3

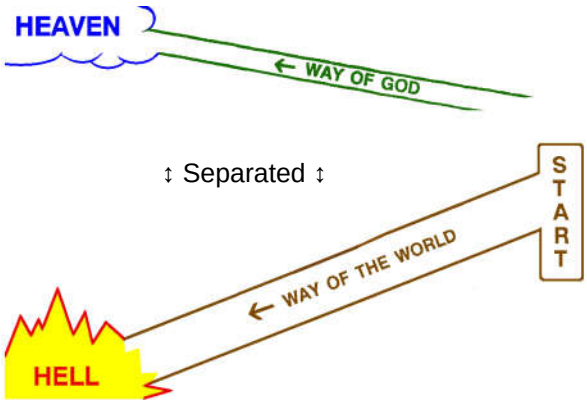
"3 I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish."

Jesus Christ can forgive us of our sins and free us from sin's handcuffs
(liberate us from sin controlling us).

In the next illustration, I call the path which Christ's death on the cross created for us, "The Jesus Exit". We are not on our way to Heaven unless we get on the "Jesus Exit"; getting on it is where we become born-again.

Every human being was born in sin and shaped in iniquity. Due to our sins, we were all doomed to the eternal lake of fire. At one time, every one of us was on "The way of the world" headed to the eternal lake of fire without hope of going to Heaven.

Sin is not allowed in Heaven, and every one of us has sinned. The punishment for our sin is death. "The way of God" and "The way of the world" were separated; there was no way, no hope, for us to get onto "The way of God", and go to Heaven.



God loves us, and he has compassion on us. He wants us to live with him in Heaven. God has great mercy for us, and gives us grace. God sent his only begotten Son to die in our place, to pay the penalty *(death)* for our sins. With his death, Jesus Christ became our door, our only way into Heaven.

God's grace is what allows the followers of Jesus Christ to go to Heaven without being 100% perfect. However, God will cause us to be perfect in Heaven. God's grace also causes us to keep growing upward into Godly righteousness, as we cooperate with God.

Jesus Christ is our only way into Heaven.

"I am the way" John 14:6

"6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me."

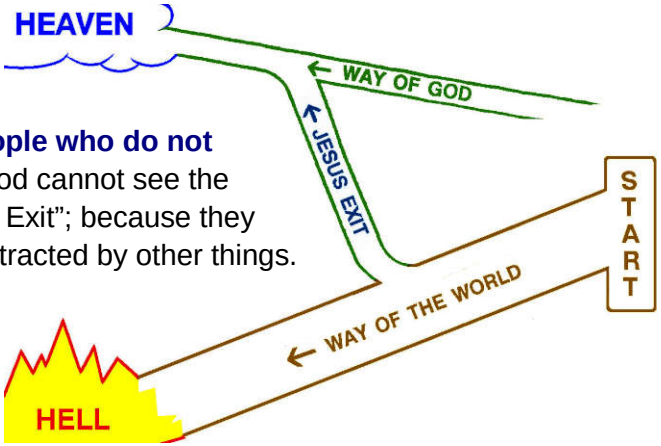
"I am the door:
by me if any man enter in,
he shall be saved" John 10:7–9



"7 Then said Jesus unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep.
8 All that ever came before me are thieves and robbers: but the sheep did not hear them.
9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture."

We cannot obtain partial grace. We cannot accept God's grace to forgive our sins, and reject the grace of God that transforms us into Godly living people. We cannot say "NO" to God as his grace is pulling us out of sinful activity. Saying "NO" is rejecting Jesus Christ as our Lord.

Jesus Christ dying on the cross results with us having a choice: we can take the Jesus Exit and follow/obey Christ up the path into Godly righteousness, all the way to Heaven, or we can go merrily on our way down the way of the world into the eternal lake of fire.



People who do not love God cannot see the "Jesus Exit"; because they are distracted by other things.

Our world is liken to a downward moving escalator, taking people down into the eternal lake of fire. Every one of us need to exit this worldly *(sinful)* downward moving escalator. But most people will stay on "the way of the world" all the way to the eternal lake of fire.

God's grace is what made us a way to exit the way of the world, so we could follow Jesus Christ to Heaven. We cannot earn Heaven, nor do we deserve it. We need to be extremely thankful to God, we need to love God with our all.

Some people believe, since God is so forgiving, they do not have to be gravely concerned about choosing to continue their sinning, but they are very wrong! Continuing to willfully choose to sin separates them from God. They need to repent: turn and obey God.

We need a perfect heart, a perfect desire, to do all of God's will. A perfect heart causes us to "strive" with all our heart, mind, soul, and strength, to do all of God's will *(loving God, and striving to obey God, are paired together)*. But because we are human, we still come up short. The important thing is that we are honestly striving with all our heart to do his will, so God will see we are honestly trying to do our best to obey him.



A mother's love for her child is dead, as long as she has no concern for him.

Likewise: Faith without "works" is dead. Why? Genuine Christian faith always produces the "works". The lack of the "works" is the results of not having the kind of faith the Bible is talking about. There is no such thing as having genuine Christian faith, while we willfully continue to choose/prefer to decline to follow Christ's instructions. If we continue choosing not to follow Christ's instructions, our Christian faith is not genuinely alive.

"is dead, being alone" James 2:17–18

"17 Even so faith, if it hath not works, is dead, being alone.
18 Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works."

If our definition of the word "WORKS" is working to earn our way into Heaven, there is nothing we can do to earn, or help earn, our way into Heaven.

If our definition of the word "WORKS" is doing things, there is no such thing as following Jesus Christ while we keep declining to do the things he tells us to do. Following Jesus Christ, carrying our cross, involves a lot of doing. If our heart is genuinely given to Jesus Christ, we will have an enormous desire/drive to do his will. It will be our heart's desire, including to follow his instructions to be baptized.

Many Bible verses connect LOVING God directly to OBEYING God.

Loving God and obeying God are welded together.
We cannot have one without the other.

We find the Bible referring to the genuine Christians as **"them that obey him"**. Jesus Christ is the author of eternal salvation to all the people who have genuinely accepted him as their Lord *(as the one they obey)*.

"them that obey him" Hebrews 5:9

"9 And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;"

If we are not striving to obey God's commandments, we do not know God, and we are not properly connected to God yet. And if we say we know him, we are a liar.

"hereby we do know that we know him,
if we keep his commandments"

"He that saith, I know him,
and keepeth not his commandments,
is a liar,
and the truth is not in him" 1 John 2:3–5

"3 ¶ And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.
4 He that saith, I know him, and keepeth not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him.
5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him."

"to them that obey him" Acts 5:32

"32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him."

Every sheep *(every person)* who belongs to Christ follows/obeys him. John 10:27

"27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:"

What we do, or do not do, reveals if we belong to God.

"whosoever doeth not righteousness
is not of God" 1 John 3:10

"10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother."

Their lack of Godly **"works"**,
declares they do not know God.

"They profess that they know God;
but in works they deny *him*" Titus 1:16

"16 They profess that they know God; but in works they deny *him*, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate."

“He that doeth good is of God:
but he that doeth evil hath not seen God” 3 John 1:11

“11 Beloved, follow not that which is evil, but that which is good. He that doeth good is of God: but he that doeth evil hath not seen God.”

Everyone who has genuinely accepted Jesus Christ as their Lord does his will, even if it is called “works”.

“Not every one that saith”
“but he that doeth” Matthew 7:21

“21 ¶ Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.”

“he that doeth the will of God
abideth for ever” 1 John 2:17

“17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.”

Falsely calling Jesus “Lord” (the one we obey) Luke 6:46

“46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?”

“He that hath my commandments,
and keepeth them,
he it is that loveth me” John 14:21

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

“If ye keep my commandments,
ye shall abide in my love” John 15:10

“10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father’s commandments, and abide in his love.”

“and doeth them not” Matthew 7:26

“26 And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand:”

Do we obey God, or yield to sin?

**“his servants ye are to whom ye obey;
whether of sin unto death,
or of obedience unto righteousness”** Romans 6:16

“16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?”

Obedience is not bondage to laws;
it is cooperating with God.

Read Revelation 22:14

If people rejected the counsel of God and acted against themselves by not being baptized with the baptism of John the Baptist, how about people who decline to be baptized into Jesus Christ? Are they rejecting the counsel of God, and acting against themselves?

**“rejected the counsel of God against themselves,
being not baptized of him”** Luke 7:29–30

“29 And all the people that heard *him*, and the publicans, justified God, being baptized with the baptism of John.
30 But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves, being not baptized of him.”

Jesus Christ tells us to repent and be baptized.
Are we going to obey Him?

We accept God’s grace by repenting, being baptized into Jesus Christ for the remission of sins *(Acts 2:38)*. Then, we follow/obey Jesus Christ up the path into Godly righteousness. We need to believe with all our heart that Jesus Christ is truly the Son of God, and genuinely accept him as our Lord *(as the one we will obey)*.

We believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and we accept him as our Lord with our heart and mind. Yet the Bible gives us instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ *(things we are to do)*. Everyone who genuinely accepts Christ with their heart and mind will follow these instructions, because we love and respect our Lord. Jesus Christ instructs us to repent and be baptized.

The first day of the Church is the day God launched /activated the Church by filling Christ's followers with the Holy Ghost/Spirit. On this day, St. Peter put forth the instructions on how to put on/join/enter Jesus Christ *(Acts 2:38)*. When we genuinely do these things from the bottom of our heart, God will fill us with the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(God will fill us with himself)*.

"Repent, and be baptized"

"ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost" Acts 2:38–39

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.
39 For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, *even* as many as the Lord our God shall call."

We will receive power,
when we receive the Holy Ghost/Spirit.

We do not have what it takes to be truly good and righteous by our self, because we are human beings. We cannot make it to Heaven without God living inside of us.

Receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit is God entering us to constantly dwell inside of us 24/7**:** to lead us; to teach us; to comfort us; to lead us out of sinning; to mold us into the ways of God; to give us strength and boldness for doing God's will; etc. Our desires are changed, because God is dwelling inside of us. Sinful things now appear disgusting, and we desire the things that are good, pure, holy, and righteous. With the Holy Ghost/Spirit dwelling inside of us, our love of God will cause us to wholeheartedly strive *(doing our very best)* to obey Jesus Christ in everything, including doing the things some people label "works", because we desire to obey him. We will pray and continually prayerfully read and search the Bible to find and follow Jesus Christ's instructions.

"ye shall receive power,
after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you" Acts 1:8

"8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth."

"But as many as received him,
to them gave he power to become the sons of God" John 1:12

"12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, *even* to them that believe on his name:"

People are addicted to sin. The first step in getting well is to admit to our self that we are sick and need help. People who are addicted to sin, and who do not want to end up being destroyed, need the help which is found only in Jesus Christ. By genuinely putting on *(joining)* themselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way, they will be forgiven and filled with the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who will cause them to travel up the road of righteousness, growing out of their sinning.

It is impossible to genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and continue to live our sinful life, as we lived before we believed on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Genuine belief on the Lord Jesus Christ always starts the dominoes falling forward in God.



Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ includes accepting him as our Lord *(as the one we obey)* > this results with us obeying him > this results with us repenting, being baptized, and receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit > this results with us following the leading of God's Spirit up the strait and narrow way of righteousness > this results with us doing good works > and on and on. It is impossible to genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ and stop there. Not proceeding forward in God reveals we have not properly believed on the Lord Jesus Christ yet.



If we do not want to carry our cross, we might reason and convince ourselves we do not have to carry it. We could call carrying our cross "works" *(physical movements)*, and point out Bible verses that declare we are not saved by our "works". This is incorrect thinking/reasoning. This is an effort to feel at ease while we are declining to do the Lord's will. Throughout this book, I point out Bible verses that declare, if we are not doing the "works" of Jesus Christ, we are not connected to Jesus Christ yet.

Following is Obeying/Doing/Cooperating Matthew 10:38

"38 And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth after me, is not worthy of me."

Luke 14:27

"27 And whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be my disciple."

Jesus Christ wants us to carry our cross: doing our duties as Christians; suffering whatever trials, tribulations, and persecutions that come our way, associated with following Jesus Christ *(doing Godly works, preaching Jesus Christ, etc.)*.

We can cooperate with Christ, and carry our cross. Or we can refuse to cooperate, and live a life separated from Jesus Christ. *(NOTE: It is impossible to travel the path of Jesus Christ, carrying our cross, until the Spirit of God is living inside of us.)*

God molds genuine Christians into righteousness.
We cannot be righteous without God dwelling inside of us.

"except your righteousness shall exceed"
"ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven" Matthew 5:20

"20 For I say unto you, That except your righteousness shall exceed *the righteousness* of the scribes and Pharisees, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven."

"if the righteous scarcely be saved" 1 Peter 4:18

"18 And if the righteous scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly and the sinner appear?"

SIN is doing things contrary to the will of God,
Not Cooperating with God, Not doing God's will.
SIN is fighting against God.

“Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin” John 8:34

“34 Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin.”

“his servants ye are to whom ye obey” Romans 6:16

“16 Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?”

“Ye cannot serve God and mammon”
(wealth – idolizing it) Matthew 6:24

“24 No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon.”

“but their heart is far from me” Matthew 15:8–9

“8 This people draweth nigh unto me with their mouth, and honoureth me with *their* lips; but their heart is far from me.
9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching *for* doctrines the commandments of men..”

Genuine Christians do not continue willfully sinning, but rather, they always strive with all their heart to obey God. If they error, they will repent, and weep bitterly. A genuine Christian feels horrid about sin, and how it will destroy him. He will run from sinning.

Genuine Christians walk in Jesus Christ *(who is the light)*

“if we walk in the light” 1 John 1:7–10

“7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.
8 ¶ If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.
9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.
10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us.

“Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin” 1 John 3:5–10

“5 And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.
6 Whosoever abideth in him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen him, neither known him.
7 Little children, let no man deceive you: he that doeth righteousness is righteous, even as he is righteous.
8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.
9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.
10 In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.”

“whosoever is born of God sinneth not” 1 John 5:18

“18 ¶ We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.”

“sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee” John 5:14

“14 Afterward Jesus findeth him in the temple, and said unto him, Behold, thou art made whole: sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee.”

“go, and sin no more” John 8:11

“11 She said, No man, Lord. And Jesus said unto her, Neither do I condemn thee: go, and sin no more.”

My prayerful studies, observations, and experiences, tell me the following: A genuine Christian does not continue choosing to sin; rather, a genuine Christian strives with all his heart to never, never, sin. If a Genuine Christian does error, he need to greatly and genuinely repent from the deep depth of his heart *(maybe even weeping bitterly)*, and strive from the deep depth of his heart, with all his being, to never, never, never, do it again. *(1 John 1:5–2:6)*

Obedience

Illustration: A man told his oldest son to mow the lawn. He mowed about half of it, and he said to himself, "Somebody else can finish mowing the lawn. I am going to play ball". And he put the mower away.

On another day, the man told his youngest son to mow the lawn. While he was mowing it, some of his friends came by and asked him "We are going to play ball. Do you want to play?" He replied "I cannot play today; I have to finish mowing the lawn." When his dad came home, he thanked him for mowing the lawn and gave him twenty dollars.

When the oldest son heard his dad gave his brother twenty dollars for mowing the lawn, he was very upset. He went to his dad irritated and said, "I should get money for mowing the lawn too. I mowed half of it; I should get ten dollars."

His dad explained "You were told to mow the whole lawn, and you only mowed part of it. You did not get any money because you did not finish the job."

The oldest son said "My brother did not mow all the grass either. Look here under the bush; he missed eight blades of grass. Look over there; he missed some by the post too."

His dad replied "I told you to mow the whole lawn. You chose not to obey my instructions by not mowing the back part of the lawn. Your brother followed my instructions. Just because he missed a few blades of grass does not make him disobedient."

Likewise: In obeying God, we need to note, there is an enormous difference between willfully choosing not to obey, and not being 100% perfect.

Obeying Christ's commandments is striving to do what he tells us to do with a right and honest heart. We never, never, want to choose to sin.

"the Holy Ghost,
whom God hath given to them that obey him" Acts 5:32

"32 And we are his witnesses of these things; and *so is* also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey him."

"Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his" Romans 8:8–9

"8 So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.
9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."

"to them that ask him" Luke 11:13

"13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall *your* heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?"

The Spirit of God, the Holy Ghost/Spirit,
and the Spirit of Christ, are one and the same.

We may follow whoever our heart chooses. God chooses the people who love him. We need to remember we are going to end up at the destination of the one we are following.

Jesus Christ is the door of God's grace.
We enter Jesus Christ
by believing on the Lord Jesus Christ,
which includes obeying Acts 2:38
which will result with us always striving to obey God.

How can we learn everything we are to do and be, in our walk with Jesus Christ? God places his Spirit inside all genuine followers of Jesus Christ. God's Spirit will cause us to learn what we need to know, as we strive to find and do God's will: praying, reading the Bible, etc. Our search for God's instructions must surpass just seeking to find, to spending ample time striving to find God's will. The amount of effort we put into finding and doing God's will/instructions reflects how much we truly love and desire God. Striving is a much stronger effort than seeking.

If I genuinely love God, I will put on *(join)* Jesus Christ the Bible way; I will live forever with God in Heaven. In the meantime, God will be molding me by his Spirit into Godly righteousness as I cooperate with him. My heart's desire will be to wholeheartedly love God with my everything, genuinely striving to obey and please God at all times.

The more that people genuinely love and obey God, the more good we have in our world. The more that people ignore and defy God, the more our world becomes evil.

The only way for humanity to exit the path of following sin, to follow God, is by going through Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ is humanity's only doorway to Heaven.

"no man cometh unto the Father,
but by me" John 14:6

"6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me."

"I am the door"

"by me if any man enter in,
he shall be saved" John 10:7–9

"7 Then said Jesus unto them again, Verily, verily, I say unto you, I am the door of the sheep.
8 All that ever came before me are thieves and robbers: but the sheep did not hear them.
9 I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture."

"sever the wicked from among the just"

"shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth" Matthew 13:47–50

"47 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind:
48 Which, when it was full, they drew to shore, and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels, but cast the bad away.
49 So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just,
50 And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth."

"we must all appear before
the judgment seat of Christ" 2 Corinthians 5:10

"10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it be* good or bad."

Judgment Day is coming very fast, yet it seems most people choose/prefer to do and live contrary to God. Pretending that the truth of the Bible, God, and Judgement Day, are not reality, will not stop Judgement Day from arriving. It will be an unimaginable fearful day for people who continue choosing to defy Almighty God, for people who decline to genuinely give themselves to Jesus Christ the Bible way. Going through Jesus Christ is our only way to Heaven.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

10
Things do not seem to make sense

Throughout the Bible, we find God doing things in ways that are unusual and non-understandable to mankind. Before we believe something, we think we need to see it, detect it, or understand it. God wants us to believe what he proclaims, just because he/God proclaimed it, without comprehension or signs; it is called faith. When God does things in ways that are very contrary to our human logic and past our human ability to understand, he is able to test our faith, and hide Godly understanding from people who oppose him.

God gives understanding as a gift to people who truly love him, and genuinely desire to do his will. He blocks much of the understanding from people who ignore and oppose him.

Just as a child who is lost in a crowd will recognize his mother's voice. God's children will also recognize the words from God. The Holy Ghost/Spirit gives the genuine children of God this Godly discernment.

God hides Godly understanding from the ungodly, <u>until they believe</u>**.** *(They are the people who do not have a real /true desire in their hearts for God, (the people who do not treat God, as God)*. This is why Jesus Christ spoke to the people in parables. Matthew 13:13–16

"13 Therefore speak I to them in parables: because they seeing see not; and hearing they hear not, neither do they understand.
14 And in them is fulfilled the prophecy of Esaias, which saith, By hearing ye shall hear, and shall not understand; and seeing ye shall see, and shall not perceive:
15 For this people's heart is waxed gross, and *their* ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with *their* eyes, and hear with *their* ears, and should understand with *their* heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.
16 But blessed *are* your eyes, for they see: and your ears, for they hear."

People, who do not have a true desire for God, see the things of God as **foolishness**.

“the natural man receiveth not
the things of the Spirit of God:
for they are foolishness unto him” 1 Corinthians 2:14

“14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know *them*, because they are spiritually discerned.”

“thou hast hid these things
from the wise and prudent,
and hast revealed them unto babes” Luke 10:21–23

“21 In that hour Jesus rejoiced in spirit, and said, I thank thee, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that thou hast hid these things from the wise and prudent, and hast revealed them unto babes: even so, Father; for so it seemed good in thy sight.
22 All things are delivered to me of my Father: and no man knoweth who the Son is, but the Father; and who the Father is, but the Son, and *he* to whom the Son will reveal *him*.
23 And he turned him unto *his* disciples, and said privately, Blessed *are* the eyes which see the things that ye see:”

“he cannot see” (cannot perceive) John 3:3

“3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.”

“lean not unto thine own
understanding” (Human reasoning) Proverbs 3:5

“5 Trust in the LORD with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding.”

“God hath chosen the foolish things of the world
to confound the wise” 1 Corinthians 1:27

“27 But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise; and God hath chosen the weak things of the world to confound the things which are mighty;”



Generally, Jews demand to see a sign from God,
and the scientific crowd demands comprehension.

**“unto the Jews a stumblingblock,
and unto the Greeks foolishness”** 1 Corinthians 1:22–23

“22 For the Jews require a sign, and the Greeks seek after wisdom:
23 But we preach Christ crucified, unto the Jews a stumblingblock, and unto the Greeks foolishness;”

To whom does Jesus Christ reveal himself as the Messiah?

“will manifest myself to him” John 14:21

“21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him.”

Contrary to human reasoning, loving God, and obeying God's commandments *(treating God, as God)*, is the path to recognizing and understanding God.

We need to have faith in God,
and believe everything he proclaims,
even if we cannot comprehend them.

**May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.**

11
Doctrine Boxes

Doctrine boxes are built with doctrines, creeds, beliefs, etc. Denominations/churches create doctrine boxes to lock their beliefs in place. It is an attempt to keep their churches uniform, and to keep them from backsliding.

The problem: Being locked in place to stop and hinder backward movement, can also stop and hinder forward movement. If we are not careful, we could be inside a non-Biblical doctrine box, or a partly Biblical doctrine box, which can hinder us from going forward in God.

We need to stay inside doctrine boxes that are Biblically accurate; not all doctrine boxes are Biblically accurate. We may find some doctrine boxes that are largely constructed from non-Biblical intellect.

We find doctrine boxes which are made for confinement. Most denominations/churches require their preachers to stay within its doctrines, or they will lose their job.

The genuine doctrine box is the Holy Bible.
The whole Bible, in context,
as interpreted by the Spirit of God.
Being led by the Spirit of God is the key.

We cannot find our way in God, unless the Spirit of God guides us. We need the Spirit of God continually dwelling inside us, to give us Godly understanding and guidance.

A preacher who does not have God's Spirit inside him, leading him, is mostly Spiritually blind. He will lead people into the Spiritual ditch every time, because he is leading with his intellect. Without the Spirit of God dwelling inside him, it is impossible for him to see the true Spiritual road.

A preacher, or anyone who has the Spirit of God leading him, does not need any doctrine boxes, creeds, etc., other than the Holy Bible. The Spirit of God will keep him on the right track.

We may find ourselves inside a doctrine box of beliefs and supporting Scriptures. We could treat this doctrine box as a fort, fighting hard to defend it. We might even start fighting against, resisting, pushing away, and mentally blocking, other Bible verses that can appear to wound or kill our beliefs; we need to remember Bible is Bible. We need to diligently study and prayerfully scrutinize all the verses that can appear to give our Biblical beliefs problems. We need to prayerfully and Biblically examine our own Biblical doctrine boxes for imperfections.

We need to prayerfully re-examine
our own beliefs, doctrines, creeds, etc.,
to see if they are truly Biblically correct.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

12
How people can get into doctrine boxes that can hinder them from freely studying and considering all the Bible verses on equal ground?

I am going to begin this chapter by giving you an illustration. This illustration will show you how people can get into doctrine boxes that can hinder them from freely studying and considering all the Bible verses on equal ground.

An illustration story: Mrs. Smith had a little baby boy, and everyone was excited. He was so cute and adorable. They loved him and wanted to give him the very best. They decided to give him a good Bible name, so they named him "Isaiah."

As Isaiah was growing up, his whole family regularly attended Sunday School, Sunday evening services, and Wednesday Night Bible Studies. In the summer he and his sister attended Vacation Bible School. By the time Isaiah graduated from High School, he had heard an enormous amount of teaching and preaching. Church was a big part of his life, and he loved it.

Isaiah decided to be a minister, and attended his denomination's seminary. After he graduated, he married the school's President's daughter. He started preaching, and soon moved up to one of the denomination's largest congregations.

The years passed quickly. Isaiah was now 50 years old, and had a good income. He had a son who was going to the same seminary he attended, and a daughter about to enter College. He knew just about every pastor in the denomination, and often ate with the denomination's leaders. All his friends, people he looked up to Spiritually, his family, his wife's family, and his children, all had strong beliefs and ties to the denomination.

Then one night there was a knock at the door. It was a member of his congregation, Harry Gordon. One of Harry's coworkers had challenged him about some of his denomination's beliefs. The coworker had given Harry Scriptures which seemed to indicate that some of the denomination's beliefs were Biblically incorrect. This bothered Harry, so he brought these Scriptures to Pastor Isaiah to find out what was wrong.

Isaiah, with many years of Bible study, automatically realized Harry's coworker was Biblically correct. In all the years Isaiah studied the Bible, he just never put these verses together.

Isaiah was in a spot. If he told Harry his coworker was correct, it would spread through his whole congregation, and Isaiah would probably lose his job as pastor. If he told Harry his coworker was wrong, he would not be telling the truth. What is Pastor Isaiah going to do? Isaiah knew if he presented it to the denomination's leaders, some would listen, but in the end they would tell him "We are not going to change the church's doctrines, because it would cause a major split in the denomination. If you are going to proclaim anything contrary to the denomination's doctrines, we will have to ask you for your resignation."

Example: If the denomination would change its doctrine about baptism, this could be seen as the denomination declaring they baptized people incorrectly for many years. This could overwhelm many of its members.

Isaiah's family and friends were all strongly connected to the denomination. If Isaiah held to what he had just learned, most of his family and friends would look down on him. He was 50 years old, and it would be hard for him to find another good paying job. This would mess up his children's education, etc.

He could avoid telling Harry his coworker was correct, without verbally lying, by saying "The denomination's viewpoint on this subject is", but this would be circumventing the truth. For a moment Isaiah did not know what to do. Then he remembered what God did to the priest Eli for not correcting things in the house of God.

A preacher is normally required to preach and teach their church's doctrines. If he starts preaching/teaching beliefs that disagree with his church's doctrines, he can normally expect to lose his job. Being handcuffed to their church's doctrines, most preachers do not feel the liberty to Biblically scrutinize their doctrines for errors.

When we discuss differing beliefs with preachers, we need to remember their occupation is to preach and defend their church's doctrines. Most preachers will only proclaim their church's beliefs, and will automatically repel any belief or Bible verse that seems to be in conflict with their church's beliefs/doctrines.

We find many doctrinal disagreements among churches, and many of the doctrines oppose each other. Therefore, we know some doctrines are off center or off-base.

All churches/people need to prayerfully and diligently compare their doctrines to the whole Bible, continuously. Too many churches/people embrace their doctrines without prayerfully studying the verses that can appear to be in conflict with their beliefs; and they simply claim it is the other churches/people who are off center and off-base. Prayerful Spirit led Bible research of all the Bible verses will confirm which doctrines/beliefs are correct.

When we follow our church's doctrines for many years, and we wholeheartedly believe they are Biblically correct, these beliefs can get welded into our innermost being. We can get to the point where it feels as if we are looking for errors in the truth, if we are searching for possible errors in our church's doctrines.

Searching for possible errors in our own doctrines/beliefs is acknowledging our understanding may not be absolutely perfect; it is acknowledging we still have room to grow in God. Searching for truth in the Bible is acknowledging the Bible is always truth, when interpreted correctly under the guidance of the Holy Ghost/Spirit. Searching the Bible to find more pieces of the truth is acknowledging we do not know everything. Genuinely searching through Bible prayerfully is acknowledging we need God's help to show us the correct interpretation.

Choosing not to study the Scriptures prayerfully

When people are shown Bible verses that appear to oppose their beliefs, most people will automatically defend their beliefs. They will brush off the Scriptures presented to them, without prayerfully studying them in depth. A belief based on four Bible verses might be challenged with eight Bible verses which seem to dissolve the belief. Even when faced with overwhelming evidence, we will probably hear the person say "I need more Biblical evidence before I will change my belief." This is because we have been taught the same beliefs so often they are welded into our innermost being, making it difficult for us to change our thinking. It is not a choice between the four verses, and the eight verses; the perfect understanding will place all twelve verses in agreement.

All his life, Isaiah lived inside of his denomination's doctrine boxes. He knew these doctrines, and the verses used to support them, inside and out. But when he taught about errors in other churches' doctrines, he was often off base, because he did not truly understand what they believe.

Isaiah spent his whole lifetime learning the doctrines of his denomination. But he only spent thirty minutes reading in a book, written by a third party, to learn what the other church believes. Isaiah should have contacted the church directly, and had them explain what they believe, and why they believe it. Then he should have spent an ample amount of time prayerfully studying the Bible verses the other church uses to support their beliefs.

In this book, I attempt to stir you to prayerfully study the rest of the Bible: the unfamiliar parts; the parts we have not focused on. We need to know what we are missing. We always need to learn and grow deeper into God.

This book centers on the main instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ. They were given to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church. All the Apostles were with St. Peter as he gave these instructions *(Acts 2:38)*. These instructions apply to us.

How to put on *(join)* Jesus Christ is only one of many Biblical topics in which we can find missing Bible verses.

How many new pieces of Biblical understanding did we learn from reading this book?

Check the boxes.

☐ **I learned:** People can end up with beliefs/doctrines which are out of Biblical context, simply by selecting *(cherry-picking)* verses that they desire, and ignoring *(declining to consider)* verses they do not like.

☐ **I learned:** Many times people take what the Bible says and bend it into what they want it to say, by using their human intellectual reasoning. Cherry-picked Bible verses mingled with human reasoning can turn the understanding into almost anything.

☐ **I learned:** Many people will follow the ways of the carnal world to their own destruction, and few people will strive *(an intense level of seeking)* to find the door *(Jesus Christ)* and follow/obey him up the strait and narrow way to Heaven.

☐ **I learned:** "Believing on the Lord Jesus Christ" includes a firm decision to follow/obey him, doing all the things of Biblical Christianity. It is impossible to genuinely believe on the Lord Jesus Christ while we continue to ignore/dismiss obeying his commandments.

☐ **I learned:** Putting on, joining, converting to, Jesus Christ includes the following: **(1)** Genuinely repenting; **(2)** Being immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of sins; **(3)** Being filled with the Spirit of God.

Acts 2:38

"38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost."

☐ **I learned:** Acts 2:38 contains the instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ. These instructions were given to the first converts of the Church, on the first day of the Church, and these instructions still pertain to everyone today. The instructions for putting on *(joining)* Jesus Christ are symbolic of Christ's death, burial, and resurrection.

□ **I learned:** We need to prayerfully, continually, and diligently, strive to find and do the will of God, as he molds us into righteousness.

□ **I learned:** Repentance is more than expressing sorrow for our sins, and asking God to forgive us. It is a firm and true decision to turn our life's direction from following the path of sin to striving to follow Jesus Christ up the strait and narrow way of righteousness. It is making Jesus Christ the Lord/leader/director/navigator of our life.

□ **I learned:** We need to put God first, above everyone /everything.

□ **I learned:** The Bible repeatedly declares there is only one God. Unlike humans, I believe God has the ability to be in multiple forms/manifestations, and presents himself to mankind as Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit.

***"there is* no God beside me"**

"I *am* the LORD, and *there is* none else" Isaiah 45:5–6

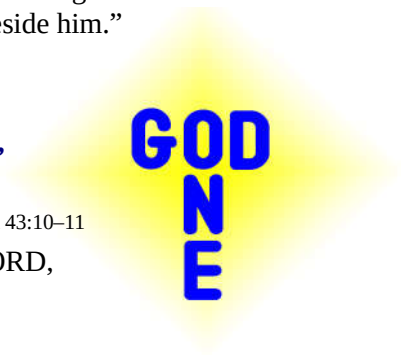
"5 ¶ I *am* the LORD, and *there is* none else, *there is* no God beside me: I girded thee, though thou hast not known me:
6 That they may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that *there is* none beside me. I *am* the LORD, and *there is* none else."

"the LORD he *is* God;
***there is* none else beside him"** Deuteronomy 4:35

"35 Unto thee it was shewed, that thou mightest know that the LORD he *is* God; *there is* none else beside him."

"that ye may know and believe me,
and understand that I *am* he:
before me there was no God formed,
neither shall there be after me"

"beside me *there is* no savior" Isaiah 43:10–11



"10 Ye *are* my witnesses, saith the LORD,
and my servant whom I have chosen:
that ye may know and believe me,
and understand that I *am* he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me.
11 I, *even* I, *am* the LORD; and beside me *there is* no savior."

“there is one God;
and there is none other but he” Mark 12:32–34

“32 And the scribe said unto him, Well, Master, thou hast said the truth: for there is one God; and there is none other but he:
33 And to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love *his* neighbor as himself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices.
34 And when Jesus saw that he answered discreetly, he said unto him, Thou art not far from the kingdom of God. And no man after that durst ask him *any question*.”

“Thou believest that there is one God;
thou doest well” James 2:19

“19 Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble.”

□ **I learned:** Biblical consistency informs us we are to be baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ.” Baptizing in the descriptive names of God *(Father, Son, and Holy Ghost/Spirit)* comes from an interpretation of one verse, and the desire to include everyone. But is there an everyone, since we only have one God?

□ **I learned:** Jesus Christ is the Father in the Son..

“ye are complete in him**”** Colossians 2:9–10

“9 For in him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily.
10 And ye are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and power:”

□ **I learned:** When we are baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”, we are being baptized into the entire one God. It is following Biblical consistency. The people in the Bible were baptized in the name of “Jesus Christ”.

“they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)” Acts 8:16

“16 (For as yet he was fallen upon none of them: only they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.)”

“they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus” Acts 19:5

“5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.”

“be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ” Acts 2:38

“38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.”

“been baptized into Christ have put on Christ” Galatians 3:27

“27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.”

“were baptized into Jesus Christ” Romans 6:3

“3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?”

“he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord” Acts 10:48

“48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.”

***“do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus”** Colossians 3:17

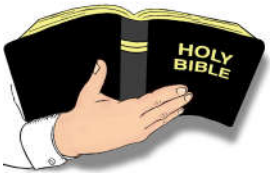
“17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, *do* all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.”

□ **I learned:** Jesus Christ instructs us to be baptized; it is part of the Great Commission.

□ **I learned:** St. Paul re-baptized people in the name of the “Lord Jesus”: people who were previously baptized unto John the Baptist baptism.

□ **I learned:** Water baptism wears the Biblical tag “for the remission of sins”. If we genuinely repent and are genuinely baptized into Christ, our sins are forgiven.

□ **I learned:** The word baptize was never translated into English. It was an everyday Greek word which means to dip /immerse.



□ **I learned:** Being immersed in the name of "Jesus Christ" for the remission of our sins, after we have believed on the Lord Jesus Christ and repented can be Biblically confirmed as being baptized into Jesus Christ.

□ **I learned:** After the midnight earthquake, Paul and Silas spoke the word of the Lord to the jailor and his household. They were baptized immediately; they did not wait until daylight !

Matthew 6:14–15

□ **I learned:** "14 For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you:
15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses."

□ **I learned:** We cannot see/find God, unless he reveals himself to us. He reveals himself to the people who love him.

"and will manifest myself to him" John 14:21

"21 He that hath my commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth me: and he that loveth me shall be loved of my Father, and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him."

□ **I learned:** God enters and continually lives inside all genuine born again Christians: to teach; to guide; and to comfort us. Following the leading of the Holy Ghost/Spirit, who lives inside every genuine Christian, and having the fruit of the Spirit in our lives, identifies us as a genuine believer. All of Christ's sheep follow him *(obey him)*.

□ **I learned:** We cannot comprehend all the truths about God, and the Spiritual world, unless the Spirit of God reveals them to us. When we study the Bible, we cannot truly understand anything past the first layer *(history, laws, events, etc.)*, unless God allows us to understand it.

**"if any man have not the Spirit of Christ,
he is none of his"** Romans 8:9

"9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his."

□ **I learned:** When we study the Biblical accounts of people receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit *(being baptized with the Holy Ghost/Spirit)*, we find a repeated Biblical pattern, the recipients spoke in tongues.

"and began to speak with other tongues" Acts 2:4

"4 And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance."

"which ye now see and hear" (speaking in tongues) Acts 2:33

"33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost, he hath shed forth this, which ye now see and hear."

"For they heard them speak with tongues" Acts 10:46–47

"46 For they heard them speak with tongues, and magnify God. Then answered Peter,
47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?"

"they spake with tongues" Acts 19:5–6

"5 When they heard *this*, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.
6 And when Paul had laid *his* hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied."

□ **I learned:** Tarrying for the Holy Ghost/Spirit is drawing nigh to God. It is totally giving ourselves to Jesus Christ: putting him first in our life; obeying him; worshiping him in spirit and in truth; telling him how much we love and appreciate him; etc.

□ **I learned:** Speaking and singing praises directly to Jesus Christ is a very important part of following him.

□ **I learned:** Love, obedience to Christ's commandments, good works, righteousness, morality, Godliness, holiness, gentleness, patience, etc., has nothing to do with earning our way into Heaven. Why? Our admission into Heaven cannot be earned. However, these things are always a part of every genuine born again Christian's life. The Spirit of God dwells inside every genuine born again Christian, and God's Spirit always molds them into these things. If we are not growing into these things, we have not properly believed on Jesus Christ yet.

□ **I learned:** Jesus Christ paid the full price for our salvation, when he died on the cross. We can make Heaven our eternal home by believing on Jesus Christ, which includes accepting him as our Lord *(as the one we will obey)*. Our first instructions are to repent and be baptized into Jesus Christ.

□ **I learned:** We cannot obtain partial grace. We cannot accept the grace of God to forgive our sins, and reject the grace of God that cleans and molds us into Godly vessels.

□ **I learned:** We are not accepted into the family of God because we made ourselves clean. It is impossible to cleanse ourselves, or earn our admission into Heaven. After we have obeyed Acts 2:38, including receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit, God will cleanse and mold us into righteous people as we cooperate with him.

Titus 2:14

"14 Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works."

We can continually learn things from the Bible all our life, and still only see the tip of the iceberg. Churches and people need to continually study the entire Bible, endlessly; we do not know everything.



We have talked about the need for us to accept Christ as our Lord *(as the on we obey)*, and to follow him. Another part of the picture is: God chooses the people who genuinely love God.

"Ye have not chosen me,
but I have chosen you" John 15:16

"16 Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that ye should go and bring forth fruit, and *that* your fruit should remain: that whatsoever ye shall ask of the Father in my name, he may give it you."

□ **I learned: T**he Bible can be used to support false beliefs, and condemn correct beliefs, by using verses and words out of context. It seems if a person does not want to believe a correct belief, he can come up with verses and words in the Bible, and mix them with human reasoning, to convince himself the belief is incorrect. If a person wants to believe a false belief, it seems he can come up with verses and words in the Bible, and mix them with human reasoning, to convince himself the belief is Biblically correct. We need to be extremely careful not to use Bible verses and words out of context. We need the Holy Ghost/Spirit living inside of us, to be able to discern what is in and out of Biblical context.

□ **I learned:** A main problem is people/churches have a tendency to travel the same Bible verses, repeatedly, until our Biblical focus is frozen to them. This can make it difficult for us to see and accept other Bible verses that can question our beliefs. We must not mentally repress, block, deflect, or discard, Scriptures that can appear contrary to our beliefs; it is possible some of our beliefs are not squarely on base. This is the reason we need to prayerfully, seriously, and intensely, study the whole Bible, including the verses that seem to disagree with our beliefs.

□ **I learned:** If we want truth, we must stay inside the Holy Bible. The entire Bible is truth; errors are misinterpretations. If we have the perfect understanding, all the Scriptures will be in harmony.

It is very important for us to read
the whole Bible every year.

Illustration: Joe opened his Bible and pointed to the word "predestinated". He wanted Carl to see that the word "predestinated" is in the Bible, and the Holy Bible is always truth. Then Joe explained to Carl all about predestination. The problem was Joe's explanation about predestination was not built from Bible verses; his explanation came from his personal thoughts, what he was taught, and his personal understanding. We need to be careful to see where Bible facts end and personal thoughts and opinions take over. The correct explanations will always be in harmony with the whole Bible.

Some people were told about being baptized in the name of "Jesus Christ," receiving the Holy Ghost/Spirit, and speaking in tongues, etc. They pulled out their Bible, and they set forth to find the errors in these unusual teachings. They searched the Holy Bible with a right heart, and they ran into a problem. Instead of finding Scriptures to reveal errors, they kept finding additional Scriptures to support these beliefs. In the end they established these beliefs were Biblically correct.

This book emphasizes the need for us to personally examine our beliefs. Get your Bible and your exhaustive concordance, and prayerfully examine the Bible. Start by seeing if you can find any missing Bible verses concerning the topics in this book.

Be sure to make yourself a paper visual; this can be a real eye opener. List everything you can find on different pieces of paper:

First sheet of paper List every Bible verse for the belief that gives us a solid fact *(Does not need a conclusion/assumption)*.

Second sheet of paper List the verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from two or more agreeing Bible verses.

Third sheet of paper List the verses for the belief that paint a conclusion/assumption, which comes from only one Bible verse. *(When a belief comes from only one Bible verse, the belief cannot be crossed checked [confirmed] with other Bible verses.)*

Fourth sheet of paper List every Bible verse that can appear to be in opposition, or gives the belief problems.

Fifth sheet of paper List every belief, thought, or idea, that is void of Biblical support. Be sure to label this paper "No Biblical Support.

After you have made these lists, be sure to circle everything that is an explanation/opinion. People can give their own personal explanation of what some individual words and phrases in the Bible mean. These explanations can be right, half right, or totally wrong.

After you have Biblically checked out this book using your exhaustive concordance, do the same for your own beliefs.

Remember: Favorable Bible verses do not cross out, eradicate, or eliminate undesirable Bible verses.

When Bible verses seem to contradict each other, neither verse may be eliminated or ignored.

Often, when people reject Bible verses,
they ignore them, and then they say,
"Those verses do not give me any problems."
(they pretend them away)

Why do churches need to revise their doctrines, when they learn their doctrines are not totally Biblically correct?
— Because souls may be in jeopardy.

May God bless you in your prayerful research.

**May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.**

An Extra Writing

The wife is to obey her husband; and the husband is to serve his wife.

(The word, "serve," means:, to be a loving caretaker, to lovingly minster to his wife's needs, to provide loving care for her.

This writing is focused on the husband's responsibility. The husband's decisions are to focus on everyone in the family, not self focused. The husband needs to interact with his wife as he would want her to interact with him if the role of authority was reversed *(The Golden Rule)*.

This writing is written concerning the error of some husbands, who believe it is their role to domineer their family, and to see that his wife, and his family, does things his way.

The source of the information for this writing comes from my personal observations of people *(what people do and say),* and the Bible. Not everything in this writing fits everyone, because everyone and every situation is different.

In general, most of the teachings in this chapter imply to everyone who oversees other people *(not just to husbands)*. It gives insight on how we are to interact with people under our charge.

How a husband treats his wife and family, good or bad, *it is the same as if* he is doing it unto God.

When a man and a woman get married, the husband becomes God's servant *(the head of his family)*, a caretaker to provide for, to care for, and to greatly love his wife and family. The husband's job is not to domineer his wife and family; rather, his job is to lovingly oversee and provide care for his wife and family, and to lead his wife, and family, into loving God, and living Godly.



The husband's responsibility is to provide, protect, and give loving care for his family. If he has a Christian family, they are also God's family/heritage. The husband is the official human overseer of his family, which is also God's family/heritage. Whatsoever the husband does to his wife and family *(if it be good or bad)*, he is also doing it to God's family/heritage. Everything anyone does unto God's family, God takes it as it was personally done unto God.

If the husband's family members are not yet a part of God's family, they are still God's creation, who are to be provided for, and treated very kindly.

The Bible tells us God made the woman for the man, to be his helper/companion, to to cooperate with *(obey)* her husband. I believe that too many times, the understanding about the wife obeying her husband has gotten out of Biblical context, by ignoring or down playing the Biblical instructions for the husband, on how he is to love, provide, care for, and interact with his wife.

The wife's responsibility to obey her husband is better understood as: "The wife's responsibility is to cooperate with her husband." This is because the word, "obey," can be viewed as a hard command, isolated from love.

The wife is to cooperate with her husband, out of love for her husband. She understands God made her husband the official decision maker for the family, who is to make loving, fair, and balanced decisions, not self focused, but always considering all the wants and needs of everyone in his family, often putting his wife and family ahead of himself.

Domineering is **contrary to love**.
Nobody is to domineer God's family/heritage,
including husbands.

However, husbands are to be in control
of their wife and family,
but not to the point of domineering.

Domineering often results with negative outcomes.

Illustration: *(Here is a good example of how a husband should treat his wife and family)* A mother had two small children she greatly loved. Because she greatly loved her children, she would buy her clothes at the thrift shop to save money, so she could buy her children some better clothes. Every afternoon, she and her two children would sit at the kitchen table and eat a popsicle together. One day there was only two popsicles. So the mother gave them to her two children, and she had none.

(The above is an example of how a husband, as the overseer, should lovingly interact with his wife and family.)

The family is not to be run military style. The husband is to oversee his wife and family, but not to be a totalitarian. The husband deciding to do everything his way; is contrary to love. His wife and family need to feel that they are a functioning part of the workings of the family, which includes some decision making. Love dictates that the husband needs to choose to do a sizable portion of the things his wife's, and his family's, way.

There are times when the husband needs to be firm in his authority. This is when the decisions are concerning choosing to do things God's way, or not. The husband is not permitted to allow his wife and family to do things contrary to God's will.

Not all the decisions in life are about choosing to do good or evil. Most of the decisions in life are about choosing preferences, and love shares the choosing of preferences *(taking turns with members of the family)*, including deciding what we are going to do.

An **everything my way** husband will destroy his family,
and he will end up being alone,
even if he is physically living with his family.

When her husband was at work, his wife was the overseer over her children. Her love for her children caused her to put their welfare ahead of her own; this is how love works. This is how, in the Christian world, the people who are in charge *(who have the oversight)* are to treat the people under their charge *(often putting them first)*.

At times, almost everyone gets to be the overseer. The husband is to be the overseer of his family, but when he goes to work the mother becomes the overseer. When the mother leaves, the babysitter, or someone else becomes the overseer, etc. But whoever is the overseer in charge, their job is to lovingly take care of, and provide for, the people under their charge.

The person in charge needs to remember we will reap what we sow. We should expect that God is going to cause us to be treated like we treat the people under our charge.

The genuine people of God are called with different names: "Children of God", "Christ's Bride", "God's heritage, etc. And when anyone treats them in a negative way, Jesus Christ takes it as they did it to him. A husband needs to recognize that his Christian bride is Christ's bride too; what he does, good or bad, to his wife, he does it to Christ's bride too, and Christ takes it personally.



Jesus Christ came down from paradise to die on the cross to care for his bride *(the genuine Christians)*. The husband is to love his wife as much as Jesus Christ loves his bride. This amount of love produces constant actions of love every day, all kinds of actions. The husband doing his part is what brings the wife obeying her husband back into balance. When the husband loves his wife as much as Jesus Christ loves his bride, his love for his wife will cause him to care and provide for her before he takes care of himself, just as Christ put his bride *(the genuine Christians)* ahead of himself, when he died for her at Calvary.



The wife should be very content to obey *(cooperate with)* her husband:

(1) because of how lovingly, wonderful, and kindly he treats, cares, and pampers her all the time, taking care of her wants and needs, often choosing to do things her way;

(2) because his decisions are always righteous and genuinely balanced among everyone's wants and needs in the family, and are not self focused, self serving, or self elevating. Because he does these things, she highly respects her husband, trusting him to always make good and righteous decisions in a loving manner.

The wife is to obey *(cooperate with)* her husband. The wife needs to accept that God put her husband in charge of their family, including making the family decisions. God has given the husband the responsibility: to love his family, to provide for his family, to minister to the needs of his family, etc., lovingly doing everything according to God's will in God's way.

The husband's authority does not override God's authority. Thus, the husband does not have the authority to tell his wife and family to do things contrary to God's will**:** to lie; to be unrighteous; to stop going to church; to commit fornication; to be unkind; etc.



At times the husband's job requires some dictating. But the husband's dictating has a line not to be crossed. If the husband's dictating passes the dictating line, his actions will reveal his endeavor is to be the one in control, and this kind of dictating shows his lack of love for his wife and family. This kind of self focused dictating will work to destroy his wife, his family, and himself.

The difference between treating your wife as a wife, or using her as your servant:

Your servant is someone who does things for you, following your dictates.

Your wife is someone you want to do things for, someone you love, cherish, and want to pamper.

Do a New Testament Word Study on the words, **"even as,"** in the verse below. It will show you the husband is to love his wife just as much as Christ loves his Church *(Christ's bride, the genuine Christians)*, and that is an enormous amount of love.

"Husbands, love your wives, even as" Ephesians 5:25

"25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it;"

Christ gave himself *(died on the cross)* for his bride, the church *(all the genuine Christians)*. The Husband is to love his wife as much.

God uses a loving Christian family to teach us things about himself. The wife obeying her husband is to parallel and teach about genuine Christians obeying Christ. The husband's extreme love for his wife, and the extent he works to care and provide for his wife, is to parallel and teach Christ's extreme love for his bride, and the extent Christ works to care and provide for his bride *(the genuine Christians)*. Husbands and wives are to maintain this parallel.

Love: The husband is Biblically instructed to love his wife. Thus, studying "love" is studying the husband's responsibilities for interacting with his wife.

Love is not measured by the husband's words, "I love you." Love is measure by his actions, how he treats his wife and family, including how much he gives up so his wife and family can have, and all the continuous actions of love he keeps doing for them.

I remember being told a story of genuine love *(I believe it was written by O Henry)*. This is the type of love a man and his wife are to have for each other. This is my description of the story**:**

A man and his wife loved each other very much. They were extremely poor; they did not have any money. It was Christmas, and their love for each other cause them to desire to give their spouse something for Christmas. The husband had a pocket watch, it was the only earthly possession he had, and he took it out of his pocket and looked at it many times a day. His wife did not have anything of value, but she had

long beautiful hair, and she fussed with it throughout the day. The husband went and sold his watch to buy his wife a set of combs for her beautiful hair. The wife went and sold her hair to buy her husband a beautiful chain for his watch.

Christmas came and they gave each other their gifts. The wife had the set of combs, but she no longer had her hair to comb. Her husband had a beautiful watch chain, but he no longer had a watch. But what they both received was an expression of love, which was far greater than the husband's watch and the wife's hair.

Like above, genuine love always causes the actions of genuine love. Genuine love will cause us to give up what we hold precious, to benefit the one we love. God loves us so much he gave his only begotten Son for our benefit. Jesus Christ loves us so much he gave his life for our benefit. This is the measure of love that a husband is to have for his wife. Genuine love will cause the husband to give up doing everything his way, so his wife can do a lot of things her way.

Genuine love causes people to deny themselves
of what is precious and valuable to them,
so they can do and give to the people they love.

If the husband expects his wife to do more for him,
than he does for his wife,
something is wrong with his love for his wife.

Genuine love gives, not takes.

The husband's genuine love for his wife will cause him to strive to please her every day, because he enjoys seeing her smile. She is to be first in his heart and life, right after God. If life was a cake, the husband's job is to cut the cake into pieces, and his love for his wife is to cause him to give her the biggest and best piece. The husband's genuine love for his wife will make it impossible for him to willfully mistreat her in any way: physically, verbally, put her down, etc.



A happy marriage is maintained when the husband and wife love God and lovingly strive to please each other every day. A one sided marriage *(almost everything my way)* does not work. Sharing needs to be a part of our love, even in the area of doing some things the way our spouse wants to do them

The word, "Charity," *(below)* means Love.
A husband is commanded to love his wife.
Love gives; it does not seek its own.

"seeketh not her own" 1 Corinthians 13:4-7

"4 ¶ Charity suffereth long, *and* is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up,
5 Doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil;
6 Rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth;
7 Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things."

A husband's job is to assist and lead,
pushing does not work.

Some people point to Scripture that says the wife is to obey her husband, and Scripture that says a husband is to rule his house. Then they conclude husbands are to rule their wives and family comparable to the kings of this carnal world ruling their kingdoms, but this is not God's way; it is contrary to the genuine love a husband is to have for his wife and family.

Many of the problems of correctly understanding the husband's God given authority come from failing to distinguish the difference between the ways of God and the ways of the carnal world *(the ways most people do things, while not considering God's directions)*. God places the husband in authority over his family. The problem is our minds want to parallel the husband's God given authority to the authority found in the carnal human world, because the authority found in the human world is the kind of authority we understand. In the authority found in the world, the person with authority is at the top; he is the boss, dictating orders to the people under his authority. He tends to be self focused, doing things his own way, doing what pleases and benefits himself. He sees

himself as the one whose job it is to boss and control the people under his authority. But with genuine Christians, God given authority, including the husband's authority, is altogether different; it does not parallel this kind of human *(totalitarian domineering)* authority.

In Christ's world, the first are to be last.

In Christ's world, the first *(the leaders)* are to be last. All leaders, the people in charge, including husbands, always have the responsibility to take care of the people under their authority before they take care of themselves: just as a captain of a sinking ship is in charge, but he is responsible to help all the other people off the ship before he gets off.

How many happy/content families do you see ruled by an "everything my way" husband?

As you read the following verses note: All Christians who have God given authority over other Christians are not to domineer the people under their authority; rather, they are to lovingly serve them, lead them, and minister to their needs.

These verses apply to all Christians leaders at all levels, including husbands, and just not to Church leaders.

Leaders in the Christian world are not to domineer the people under their authority; a husband is not to domineer his wife and family. Things are not to be run military style. Christ said it this way**: "But it shall not be so among you"** *(Among Christians)*, and, **"But ye *shall* not *be* so".**

"the princes of the Gentiles exercise dominion over them"

"But it shall not be so among you"

"chief among you, let him be your servant" Matthew 20:25-28

"25 But Jesus called them *unto him*, and said, Ye know that the princes of the Gentiles exercise dominion over them, and they that are great exercise authority upon them.
26 But it shall not be so among you: but whosoever will be great among you, let him be your minister;
27 And whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your servant:
28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many."

“they which are accounted to rule over the Gentiles”

“exercise lordship over them”

“But so shall it not be among you”

“the chiefest, shall be servant of all” Mark 10:42-45

“42 But Jesus called them *to him*, and saith unto them, Ye know that they which are accounted to rule over the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and their great ones exercise authority upon them.
43 But so shall it not be among you: but whosoever will be great among you, shall be your minister:
44 And whosoever of you will be the chiefest, shall be servant of all.
45 For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.”

“The kings of the Gentiles exercise lordship over them”

“But ye *shall* not *be* so”

“he that is chief, as he that doth serve” Luke 22:25-27

“25 And he said unto them, The kings of the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and they that exercise authority upon them are called benefactors.
26 But ye *shall* not *be* so: but he that is greatest among you, let him be as the younger; and he that is chief, as he that doth serve.
27 For whether *is* greater, he that sitteth at meat, or he that serveth? *is* not he that sitteth at meat? but I am among you as he that serveth.”

Genuine Christians are the sons of God, and Jesus Christ's family. Jesus Christ calls them brothers, sisters, and mother, they are Christ's family ***(God's heritage).***



“the same is my brother, and my sister, and mother”

“35 For whosoever shall do the will of God, the same is my brother, and my sister, and mother.”

Being a lord over someone, domineering, is contrary to love *(nobody likes to be domineered)*. Jesus Christ does not want anybody to treat any one of his family members this way. A person under our authority is to be directed very kindly with much love. We need to remember a genuine Christian is Christ's bride; we need to treat his bride with much love.

Even though the following is addressed to the elders of the Church, it reinforces that leaders in God's world are not to be domineering lords over God's people. Actually, nobody *(absolutely nobody)* is to be a domineering lord over God's people, including husbands.

"Neither as being lords over *God's* heritage" 1 Peter 5:1-4

"1 ¶ The elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed:

2 Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight *thereof*, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind;

3 Neither as being lords over *God's* heritage, but being ensamples to the flock.

4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away."

If the husband rules his household in genuine love, his wife will not feel as he is controlling her in dictator mode; his love for her is always making plenty of room for her wants and needs. He often chooses to do things her way, just to make her happy: it falls under love, being fair, caring, and sharing.

God has placed the husband in charge of his family; thus, it is his job and responsibility to make the final family decisions. He is to do it with an abundance of love, not self focused, but impartially considering everyone's wants and needs in his family. He will often choose to take the short stick to benefit his wife and family. In most cases, his wife and family will willfully obey him.

Illustration: The parents put their 18 year old son in charge of his younger brothers and sisters while the parents were away. They did not elevate him above his brothers and sisters; he and all his brothers and sisters are equal *(of the same value and importance)*. The 18 year old was not elevated to a domineering dictatorship; he was simply given the responsibility to oversee his younger brothers and sisters. He is required to do the things that are in the best interest of everyone, to be fair, considering everyone's wants and needs, following the examples of his parents.

Likewise: God putting the husband in charge is giving him a job, a set of responsibilities; it is not elevating the husband above his wife and family. His authority is simply a tool to fulfill his great responsibility of serving *(ministering to the needs of)* his family as a loving overseeing caretaker, following God's instructions. The husband is in charge, while remaining equal to his wife and family in value and importance. There is no respect of persons with God.

Some husbands are more self focused; they want to be the one in control, domineering his wife and family. Stern domineering kills love. It will produce rebellion, divisions, bitterness, mental problems, separation, etc. In the end, it will destroy the marriage, the family, and the husband.

Stern Domineering is oppressive control; it is often abusing power over adults. They are to do as they are told without questioning it. They are seldom allowed to choose, or do things their own way. Stern domineering says: "I am the king of my family, you are obligated to heel to what I say, how I say, and when I say.

The family is not to be run military style. Husbands that genuinely love their wife and family will not treat them this way.

If the husband gets upset when someone pushes to boss and control him, then he knows how his wife feels when he pushes to boss and control her. A husband's genuine love for his wife will cause him to say, "I am not going to do that to my beloved wife" *(Remembering the golden rule)*.

Some husbands put themselves ahead of their wife and family, looking out for themselves first. A husband who self-centeredly *(me, me, my way, my way)* bosses his family, whose decisions regularly favor himself, will almost always end up being by himself, separated from his wife and children, even if they are living in the same house. I have seen how stern domineering destroys both the people being sternly domineered and also the person doing the stern domineering.

There is a road that husbands are to travel in their God given authority/responsibilities. There are curbs on both sides of the road. If a husband is not careful, he can get off the road to the right or to the left, and in both cases it can destroy his marriage and family. **(1)** He can get off the left side of the road by not giving his family proper Godly oversight, letting his family members wander into unGodly activities. **(2)** He can get off the right side of the road by being self centered, declaring himself to be the king of his family, declaring that his wife and family are to heel to his every command, making them do everything his way. This is not love.

Some people are short sighted. They think, if they are not sternly domineering people, they are not in control. They do not grasp that sternly domineering people gives them less control, because stern domineering produces resistance and rebellion, and builds a wall of separation between them and the people they are trying to sternly domineer. Saying, “I am the king of our family, heel to my commands,” is a family killer.

A husband with God given authority can be in complete control of his family without being a totalitarian dictator; instead, he can rule his family with love. I have observed that most people freely and willfully obey *(cooperate with)* their leader who greatly loves them, who rules by lovingly leading and teaching, by setting a good example, by honestly taking into account the wants, needs, and concerns of the people under their authority, by always making decisions that

put the people's welfare ahead of himself, by going out of his way to make sure everyone is treated kindly and fairly, by always striving to do everything God's way, and by never allowing room for unGodliness. I have observed that we get more obedience from individuals through honestly loving and caring for them, than we get through bossing them. The people cooperate with their leader, because they see their leader is lovingly doing what is fair, righteous, Godly, etc.

Loving leadership builds the family
and earns respect for the husband.

There are times when the husband must dictate sternly; this is when things are about doing and acting righteously, doing things God's way, but most of the choices in life are preferences, and are not about good versus evil. Choices of preferences need to be freely shared with the wife and family, or the family will normally fall apart. There is a time for dictating, but there is a huge amount of time to love, and to refrain from dictating.

To be fair, the older son was to cut the cake in half, and the younger son was to pick his piece first. Similarly, the husband is to make the family decisions, and the balance is that his decisions are to favor his wife and family ahead of himself *(Women and children first)*. The husband's love for his wife and family is to cause him to be fair and share, even in the area of deciding things. The husband needs to treat his wife and family as lovingly as he wants God to treat him.

Illustration of a husband making a family centered decision with love: Bill worked a stressful pressure job involving many people. His wife Judy worked a dull boring job, away from people.

It was time to go on vacation. Bill wanted to spend their vacation at a quiet peaceful secluded cabin, away from work, people, computers, phones, etc. Judy wanted a vacation with life and excitement. Since Bill was the husband, it was his job to make the decision.

Bill's love for Judy caused him to tell her, "This year we will spend our vacation where you want to go, and next year we will spend our vacation at the cabin, so I can get some peace and quiet."

Bill did not use his power of making the decisions to favor himself; rather, he uses his power of making the decisions to favor everyone in his family. Bill loves his wife and family, and wants to treat them right.

The husband and wife do not vote on what they are going to do. It is the husband's job to make the family decisions; however, he is required to make them God's way. He needs to put his wife and family ahead of himself. The husband's decisions should favor his wife first, giving her the most benefits, giving her the best care.

The husband has the God given role to be the strong one who cares for the weaker one: his wife. The husband is to pick up his wife and gently carry her through the hard times of her life: if she has a problem, he takes care of it; if she is crying, he consoles her; if she needs an outfit, he works to see that she gets it; if she stubs her toe, he is there for her, etc. All the husband's actions should be paralleling Christ caring for his bride *(the genuine Christians)*.

God loves the husband's wife and family too, so the husband needs to treat his wife and family lovingly and kindly, because he does not want to irritate God.

If we are a person who is in charge, including a husband, we need to see our self as a teacher and leader. We must not think too highly of our self, or it can cause us to get angry at people for not heeling to our commands *("God put me in charge, who do they think they are to disobey me?" -- This is a feeling of self importance, instead of focusing on the importance of doing God's will)*. If people are not obeying us, maybe it is because we are bossing them instead of teaching and leading them in love, maybe our lives are not being a good example for them. If we believe people are not respecting us, what are we doing to earn their respect?

My study of the Bible, and experience in life, tells me no human being is to have complete authority over a Christian. Except for God, everybody's authority, which includes the husband's, is limited; it has boundaries. The wife and family are to obey the husband as long as the husband's instructions are in the will of God. The husband does not have the authority to tell his wife and family to lie, to be unrighteous, to stop going to church, to commit fornication, to be unkind, etc.; this is because the husband's authority does not override God's authority.

People need time and room to do almost everything their own way, to be themselves. A husband who demands that his wife and family do almost everything his way, takes away the freedom from his wife and family to be themselves. He can become like a mother who is constantly pushing her son to think and act like his younger brother; it does not work. Only a person's freewill choice, and God, can change a person. In almost all cases, the husband who constantly commands his wife and family to change and act like someone else will destroy his family, including himself. If someone needs to change, we first need to pray for them; then we need to lovingly convince them to genuinely want to change. Commanding, pressing, and obligating people to change does not work; it just produces anger.

All people have characteristics born into them, and characteristics that their lifetime environments have welded into them, which form the individual. These characteristics need to be accepted by the people around them, because there is almost zero chance of getting them to change to be like someone else. If they need to change, we need to pray for them, because God can change them. If a man marries a woman who is always going here and there, there is very little chance that he can turn her into a homebody; it will not work, even if she promises she is going to change. It is nearly impossible for the person himself to change the characteristics which were born and welded into him.

Example: I have observed that sloppiness/neatness is one of these characteristics. If a sloppy person wants to be a neat person, and they try very hard to be a neat person, in almost all cases it only lasts a short time, and they fall back to being sloppy again. Since they cannot get them self to change, others pressuring them to change only produces irritation, anger, and division, without change.

When a husband frequently chooses to do things his wife's way, he is showing his wife love by giving her room to be herself. A husband who demands that almost everything be done his way, and seldom chooses to do anything his wife's way, will destroy his marriage. Why? Denying someone adequate time and room to be themselves is a form of mental strangulation. You cannot be mentally strangling your wife and have a satisfactory marriage.

A husband should not expect God to treat him any better than he treats his wife. We reap what we sow. If we genuinely love God, God will continue to love us. If we reject God, God will reject us. If we forgive others, God will forgive us. If we don't forgive others, God will not forgive us. God will judge us as hard as we judge others. And the list goes on and on. If the wife comes to her husband with a problem and he says, "It is your problem, take care of it yourself;" the husband should expect the same answer from God, when he goes to God with one of his problems. If the husband will not carry his wife through the hard times of her life, he should not expect God to carry him through the hard times of his life. If the husband supplies his wife's needs, but is stingy on supplying her wants, he should expect God to do the same to him. If the husband puts his wife down, he should expect that God will put him down too. And the list goes on and on. The better he treats his wife and others out of love, the more good he should see in his life.



If his wife is a genuine Christian, then she is Jesus Christ's bride too; and whatsoever the husband does to his wife, good or bad, he also does it unto Jesus Christ's bride. If the husband mistreats his wife, he is mistreating Jesus Christ's bride. If he belittles his wife by calling her names, or talking down to her as if she was a child, he is belittling Jesus Christ's bride. If he bosses his wife hard, he is bossing Jesus Christ's bride hard. If he does not work to please his wife, he is not working to please Jesus Christ's bride. However, if he takes good care of his wife, he is taking good care of Jesus Christ's bride. The husband of a genuine Christian wife has been given the job/responsibility of caring for Jesus Christ's bride *(his Christian wife)*. If the husband is a genuine Christian, then whatsoever the wife does to him, good or bad, she also does it unto Christ's bride. *(Every genuine Christian is part of Christ's bride.)*

If a husband calls his genuine Christian wife ill names, Christ takes it personally, because she is a part of Christ's bride.

I have heard someone saying it was okay for them to call their family members ill names, because they were their family. In reality, it is mean and wrong to call anyone an ill name. It is worse when people do it to their own family members. It is the husband's job to protect his wife and family; if he calls them ill names, it is worse than when other people do it. It is like the following: Robbing banks is bad, but it is worse when the police are the ones robbing them.

Christ, who genuinely has authority over us, teaches and leads us; he does not compel us to obey him; rather, obeying him is our choice. We are to choose/prefer to do God's will. Likewise, wives need to choose to obey their husbands. Husbands pressuring their wives to obey them destroys their family. If husbands genuinely love their wives as much as Jesus Christ loves his bride, putting them ahead of themselves, I believe most wives will willingly choose to obey their husband's fair, loving, and righteous directions.

God made a man to be a man, and he made a woman to be a woman. Our example of a man being a man is Jesus Christ. A man being a man is measured by how much he gives of himself, how much he gives up, so he can provide proper care for his wife, family, and others. Christ gave up his life when he died for his bride.

A husband and wife need to go out of their way to do and care for each other. The wife might separate herself from her husband by telling him, "You are a big boy. I am not your slave. You can make your own sandwich, and wash your own clothes." The reality is the husband and wife are to serve *(care and do for)* each other; this is the only way they can have a good loving marriage.

Often, a 50/50 relationship in a marriage does not work. A marriage needs to be a 30/70 relationship: 30% for me, and 70% for my spouse. Both the husband and wife need to do this if they want a good marriage. Why would people give their spouse 70% and only take 30% for themselves; the reason is called LOVE.

In a good marriage there are no secrets: no secret bank accounts, etc. We do not hide things from our spouse. We do not tell our spouse, "That is none of your business," because in marriage, everything is shared business. We need to tell our spouse the things we are doing, and why we are doing them. Hiding things divide the husband and wife, and works to destroy the marriage.

In a good marriage everything is our things to do, our responsibilities, our house, our children, our bills, our cars, etc. In a good marriage the husband and wife function as one.

It is not a good marriage if the husband and wife live and go in their separate directions. Instead of a marriage, the husband and wife become two individuals who live in the same house, who share the same children, etc. Often the marriage becomes more divided if they divide jobs and responsibilities: it becomes my job, your job; my bill, your bill; my car, your car; my responsibilities, your responsibilities; etc. In a divided marriage the husband and wife might say, "I am not going to do that; it is your job; it is your bill; it is your responsibility;" etc. When the husband and wife are not lovingly working as one, the marriage becomes divided.

Some people believe that they are not being bossy because they ask people to do things instead of telling them. But if we ask someone to do something, then we get irritated because he did not do it, we are not really asking him; rather, we are telling him to do it, using a question. We got irritated because he did not follow our directive *(our command)*. Genuine asking does not require our obedience; "NO" is an acceptable answer. We can be a bossy dictator phrasing our commands as questions.

S**ometimes imperative sentences are** used to make a request *(asking)*. My wife might tell me, "Take the garbage out." Even though she did not phrase it as a question, she is actually asking me, not ordering me, to take the garbage out.

A husband should expect many family problems if he spends too much time thinking about his own things *(job; activities; etc.)*, and too little time planning how to please his wife and family. It is easy for a self focused husband to become separated from his family.

I believe if the husband always takes the short stick, he can start to feel dispirited. The goal is for the husband to be fair to all, including being fair to himself. Humans have the tendency to see their own stick shorter than it is, and to see other people's sticks longer then they are; thus we choose a shorter stick to help make things more equal. It is a shame for a husband to be giving his wife the shorter stick, while he is regularly taking the longer stick for himself. The husband's decisions need to be fair to his wife, family, and himself.

If our wife is not obeying *(cooperating with)* us, maybe we are not treating her properly: the way God wants us to lovingly treat her.

The Golden Rule Luke 6:31

"31 And as ye would that men should do to you, do ye also to them likewise."

Question: Does a husband have a right to complain about his wife not doing her part of obeying him, if he is not doing his part of genuinely loving his wife, which includes the actions that genuine love produces. Remember: Genuine love always gives.

Who is Guilty?

People can only take so much before they break.
Too much domineering will break almost anybody,
including wives and children.

When a wife does not obey her husband, who is guilty?
Is it the wife for not obeying her husband,
or is it the domineering husband
who drove her to the breaking point,
or is it both?

“and shall cleave unto his wife” Genesis 2:24

“24 Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh.”

“He that loveth his wife
loveth himself” Ephesians 5:28

“28 So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife loveth himself.”

“love his wife
even as himself” Ephesians 5:33

“33 Nevertheless let every one of you in particular so love his wife even as himself; and the wife *see* that she reverence *her* husband.”

“that your prayers be not hindered” 1 Peter 3:7

“7 Likewise, ye husbands, dwell with *them* according to knowledge, giving honor unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life; that your prayers be not hindered.”

The husband's job is to be a LOVING overseer,

not a totalitarian/commander

over his wife and family family.

May God bless you with truth,
as you do your prayerful research.

I am 77 years old,
and I do not want this book to die with me.

I wrote my book for the glory of God, and to help people get genuinely connected to God. I did not write my book for financial profit. I wrote it to be reproduced for, and by, everyone. My goal is to give my book to as many people as possible, stirring them to prayerfully study all of the Bible for themselves, to genuinely find God for themselves.

My book is not public domain, BUT making copies of it, and passing the book unto others, is permitted and greatly encouraged. Please do it.

Study the Rest of the Bible, by Frederick C. Rauch
Copyright © 2004 – 2026 by Frederick C. Rauch
and its licensors. All rights reserved.

My book is not copyrighted for the purpose of banning or hindering reproductions of it. My book is copyrighted to forbid altering it. You are not allowed to alter my book *(change what it is saying)*. The copyright page must be attached to everything that is reproduced; this is for legal reasons.

You may fix obvious typing mistakes in my book, but the Bible text *(including the italics)* must match the AV Bible. Punctuation that is outside quotes is not a typing mistake.

Reproductions of this book

I am not a lawyer, but to the best of my knowledge and belief, this book is totally my book, except for the text from the Authorized King James Version Bible. I believe I hold the full authority of this book, to allow reproduction.

I give my permission for you to make copies of my book *(PDF, or on paper)*. I greatly encourage people to make copies of my book, and to give it to others. This should stimulate their drive to prayerfully study the Bible and grow in God. Please put forth an effort to forward my book to other people, but do it in a legal, honest, and upright way *(no spam, etc.)*

I encourage people to study my book, as individuals and groups, cross-examining it with the whole Bible. This would be an interesting subject to study in Sunday School.

I encourage Bible Seminaries/Colleges/etc. to get their students to cross-examine it with the whole Bible. Teachers and preachers need to be prepared for teaching and preaching God's word, they need to know what other churches truly believe, and why they believe it. And prayerfully studying new things in the Bible will always cause us to grow in God.

If you do anything with my book,
you are required to do it in a legal way.

If you are in the UK *(United Kingdom)*, my understanding is the Crown holds the copyright to the Authorized Version text *(King James Version)*. You might (?) need their permission to legally reproduce the Bible text: parts of the of Authorized Version Bible text are used in this book. Check it out. My understanding is the copyright applies only to the UK *(United Kingdom)*, and not to the rest of the world.

You may make unaltered copies of this PDF file, and give them to others.

I may make some special PDF files of my book, to make it easier to print copies of it correctly. These special files may be a better match for your printer's/program's capabilities, resulting in a greatly improved printed copy. These files may be copied, but not altered.

You may print paper copies of my book, in whole or in part, as long as they are printed without any alterations, and the copyright page is fastened to everything that is printed *(the copyright page is in the front of the book)*.

I currently have my book in the PDF format, so I can keep it formatted correctly. Some words in the King James Version of the Bible are in italics. These are words that were added to the text as a result of translating the Bible into English. These words are in italics, so people can see which words are added words, so the people do not count them as part of the Scriptures. The italicized words need to be kept in italics.

As time moves along, things change. You have my permission to move my book into the newer formats, as long as it is done in a way that is legal, honest, upright, and protects all copyrighted things; and the book remains unaltered/unchanged, **THIS INCLUDES THE ITALICIZED WORDS OF THE BIBLE.**

You must also add the following to the title and copyright page: "Study the Rest of the Bible" converted to the *new format name,* by your name _____.

Example: "Study the Rest of the Bible" converted to .RTF by Joan Smith.

If you do not want to use your name, use the word, "Anonymous"

The book, in the new format, needs to be a copyrighted book, and hopefully freely shared with everyone.

You may translate my book into a different language, as long as it is a faithful translation, as long as it is done in a way that is legal, honest, upright, and protects all copyrighted things; and the book remains unaltered/unchanged.

You must also add the following to the title and copyright page: your name's translation of "Study the Rest of the Bible" into new language.

Example: John Gilbert's translation of "Study the Rest of the Bible" into French

If you do not want to use your name, use the word, "Anonymous"

The book, in the new translation, needs to be a copyrighted book, and hopefully freely shared with everyone.

You may make a video reproduction of my book, as long as it is a faithful reproduction, as long as it is done in a way that is legal, honest, upright, and protects all copyrighted things; and the book remains unaltered/unchanged.

You must also add the following to the title and copyright page: your name‘s video of "Study the Rest of the Bible".

Example: Sally Smith’s video of "Study the Rest of the Bible”

If you do not want to use your name, use the word, "Anonymous"

The video, needs to be a copyrighted video, and hopefully freely shared with everyone.

You may make an audio reproduction of my book, as long as it is a faithful reading, as long as it is done in a way that is legal, honest, upright, and protects all copyrighted things; and the book remains unaltered/unchanged..

You must also add the following to the title and copyright page: your name ‘s reading of "Study the Rest of the Bible".

Example: Tom Edward’s reading of "Study the Rest of the Bible”

If you do not want to use your name, use the word, "Anonymous"

The audio needs to be copyrighted, and hopefully freely shared with everyone.

Check things out with your lawyer.

If you make a translation, audio reproduction, video reproduction, video, etc., it is smart to check things out with your lawyer. When you are putting anything together, you might use or insert some third party items without knowing it.

I am not a lawyer, but to the best of my knowledge and belief, this book is totally my book, except for the text from the Authorized King James Version Bible. I believe I hold the full authority of this book, to allow reproduction.

The Yellow Pages do not need to be printed on paper copies.

It is smart to scan this file for unwanted and malicious things, because it may have traveled through many computers, etc. You never know, it might have picked up something along the way.

Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer

The *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer* is referencing this PDF file.

I try to keep this PDF file clean and problem free. But computers and software are not error/problem free. Once in a while something goes wrong. If by chance something goes wrong from using this file and/or stems from using this file, it is your problem and expense. By using this file, you are accepting the total risk for anything going wrong. If something goes wrong, you are accepting the full responsibility and liability.

The person, organization, church, etc., whoever uses this file in any way, hereafter, in this *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer* document, is referred to as "you".

With the exception of the Bible text (the rights in which are vested in the Crown), everything in this PDF file, including, but not limited to, all text content, all data, all code/codes, all artwork, all logos, all trademarks, all fonts, are Copyrighted by Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors, all rights reserved. Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors retain all rights of ownership, including, but not limited to, property rights, title, intellectual property rights, all text, all content, all data, all code/codes, all artwork, all logos, all trademarks, all fonts, to everything in this PDF file, except the Bible text (the rights in which are vested in the Crown).

By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just

having a copy of the file, you are accepting the complete file **as is**. There are absolutely no guarantees, no warranties, that this PDF file is free from viruses and/or other hazardous things and/or malicious things and/or code/codes, which might directly and/or indirectly cause ill and/or unwanted results, great or small, incidental or consequential, to a computer/computers and/or other electronic devices, including, but not limited to, their software, their hardware, their folders, their files, and/or anything connected to a computer or other device. By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this file, you are accepting all of the risks.

By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this PDF file, you are agreeing to defend, indemnify, and hold Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors innocent/harmless, free from all claims and/or payments for losses and/or injuries, including, but not limited to, expenses, expenses from losses and/or injuries, lawyer fees, lawsuits, and from any and all liability and expenses of every kind, which might arise.

By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this file, you are legally agreeing to completely accept all risks of every kind connected to this PDF file. By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this file, you are legally accepting all the risks and all responsibility and all liability for any and all ill/unwanted results, which might result from using this file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this PDF file, and/or stem from contact with this PDF file.

By using this PDF file, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just

having a copy of this file, you are accepting and agreeing to follow all the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to legally accept all risks, all responsibility, and all liability, for any and all ill/unwanted results which might result from using, including, but not limited to, downloading, printing, viewing, copying, or just having a copy of this PDF file, and/or stem from using this PDF file, and/or stem from contact with this PDF file, you may not use, have a copy of, or do anything with, this PDF file. If you do not agree to accept and follow all the terms of this agreement, you may not use, have a copy of, or do anything with, this PDF file.

By accepting the *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer*, you may do two things; but before doing any of them, check the laws of the country in which you are located to see if you are allowed to do them. You are the one responsible for obeying the laws.

If you are in the UK (United Kingdom), my understanding is the Crown holds the copyright to the Authorized Version text (King James Version). You might (?) need their permission to legally reproduce the Bible text: parts of the Bible text are used in this PDF file. Check it out. My understanding is the copyright applies only to the UK (United Kingdom), and not to the rest of the world. If you accept the *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer*, you may do the following:

(1) Make copies of this PDF file, **as long as it is:**

(a) Copied in whole *(totally everything)* without any alterations, including all copyright notices, including the *Terms of Use / Agreement / Disclaimer*.

(2) Print on paper copies of this PDF document file, in whole or in part, **as long as:**

(a) They are printed without any alterations;

(b) The copyright page is fastened to anything and everything, whole or in part, that is printed;

(c) All copies retain the italicized words of the Bible in italic.

Copyright © 2004 – 2026 by Frederick C. Rauch and its licensors. All rights reserved.

May God Bless You!